

# SENGA HANDBOOK

A SHORT INTRODUCTION TO  
THE SENGA DIALECT AS SPOKEN  
ON THE LOWER LUANGWA  
NORTH-EASTERN RHODESIA

A. C. MADAN

OXFORD: AT THE CLARENDON PRESS

Price Two Shillings and Sixpence Net

# SENGA HANDBOOK

A SHORT INTRODUCTION  
TO  
THE SENG A DIALECT  
AS SPOKEN ON THE LOWER LUANGWA  
NORTH-EASTERN RHODESIA:

BY

A. C. MADAN, M.A.

STUDENT OF CHRIST CHURCH, OXFORD



OXFORD  
AT THE CLARENDON PRESS

1905

BOSTON UNIVERSITY LIBRARIES

HENRY FROWDE, M.A.  
PUBLISHER TO THE UNIVERSITY OF OXFORD  
LONDON, EDINBURGH  
NEW YORK AND TORONTO

PL  
8656  
.M3  
1905

## PREFACE

FEW persons are likely at present to begin the study of Senga without previous knowledge of some other dialect of Bantu. It may therefore be enough to say that Senga exhibits all the general features of other Bantu dialects, and no attempt is made here to enlarge upon such. Nor can completeness be claimed for any part of this short Introduction even as to what is peculiarly Senga. All that is aimed at is a brief outline, accurate as far as it goes, of Senga Grammar and Vocabulary, in the hope that it will at least be sufficient as a starting-point for further study, and require supplementing rather than correcting hereafter.

By Senga is here meant the particular selection of Bantu forms and words used by the Senga people in British territory on the Lower Luangwa. A large section of the tribe is in Portuguese territory southward to the Zambezi, and there are Sengas settled in the north of the Luangwa valley, as well as among the Angoni eastward. How far they use the Senga represented in this book, the compiler does not at present know. Hitherto Senga appears to have been entirely unwritten, and it is not even mentioned by Torrend (*Comparative Grammar of South African Bantu*) or by Last (*Polyglotta Africana Orientalis*). A short Vocabulary of Northern Senga by Sir H. H. Johnston agrees closely with the present one. The Sengas are a weak tribe (though they may number some 50,000 altogether) raided hitherto by stronger neighbours, Wemba, Angoni, and Portuguese, without enterprise or important arts, and their dialect does not appear likely to spread or even to hold its own as a separate one against the unifying tendencies already at

## PREFACE

work in North-Eastern Rhodesia. It has points of clear resemblance to other dialects between the Luangwa and Lake Nyasa, as well as to Swahili and others more distant, but it also has its own features of interest and perhaps some real peculiarities, as may be gathered from the following pages.

Their contents were compiled mainly from the evidence of an intelligent young Senga, who has travelled but little, and does not know familiarly any dialect but that of his home on the Luangwa. The fact increased the value of his evidence as well as the difficulty of obtaining it. The result is at least a specimen of what is actually spoken as Senga, and one which has borne such verification and farther inquiry as the circumstances allowed. In describing it, a knowledge of the meaning of grammatical terms and distinctions common to most grammars is throughout assumed.

The Senga call themselves Ansenga, their country as a whole Unsenga, and their language Chinsenga.

FORT JAMESON,  
March 8, 1905.

A. C. MADAN.

The separate lists of Nouns, Verbs, &c., will supply in some degree the place of a Senga-English supplement to the English-Senga Vocabulary at the end.

# CONTENTS

CHAPTER	PART I.	PAGE
I. SENGA AS WRITTEN . . . . .		7
II. NOUNS, WITH LISTS OF EACH CLASS . . . . .		8
III. ADJECTIVES AND NUMERALS, WITH LIST . . . . .		21
IV. PRONOUNS . . . . .		24
V. VERBS . . . . .		26
(i) Tenses of the Indicative Mood . . . . .		27
(a) Present . . . . .		28
(b) Perfect . . . . .		30
(c) Past and Narrative . . . . .		31
(d) Imperfect . . . . .		32
(e) Future . . . . .		33
(f) Conditional . . . . .		34
(ii) Imperative, Subjunctive, Infinitive, Participles . . . . .		34
(iii) Derived Verb-stems . . . . .		36
(iv) 'To be,' 'To have' . . . . .		37
List of Verbs . . . . .		39
VI. ADVERBS, PREPOSITIONS, CONJUNCTIONS, INTER- JECTIONS, WITH LISTS . . . . .		45
VII. NOTES ON SYNTAX . . . . .		48
VIII. APPENDIX . . . . .		50
(a) Miscellaneous sentences, English and Senga . . . . .		50
(b) A Story in Senga, with Translation . . . . .		53
(c) The Lord's Prayer and Ten Commandments in Senga (tentative translation) . . . . .		56

## PART II.

ENGLISH-SENGA VOCABULARY . . . . .	57
------------------------------------	----

o  
E  
S

## CHAPTER I

### SENGA AS WRITTEN

IT appears that the sounds used in the Senga dialect are capable of being sufficiently represented in writing by the use of the English alphabet according to the system adopted by Bishop Steere for Swahili, and by many others.

As applied to Senga the system is briefly this:—

I. Vowels, as in Italian, i. e. *a, e, i, o, u*, are used as follows:—

<i>a</i>	for the sound of <i>ar</i> in <i>farther</i> .
<i>e</i>	” <i>a</i> in <i>fate</i> ,
<i>i</i>	” <i>ee</i> in <i>fect</i> .
<i>o</i>	” <i>or</i> in <i>sort</i> .
<i>u</i>	” <i>oo</i> in <i>root</i> .

In unaccented syllables each vowel may have a lighter sound. When vowels occur together, each is pronounced separately.

2. Consonants, as in English, except that

*c* is only used in the combination *ch*, for the sound of *ch* in *chin*.

*g* is only used for the sound of *g* in *go*, never as *j*.

*s* is only used as in *so*, never for *z*.

*y* is used only as a consonant or semi-vowel, not a distinct vowel as in *any*.

The only points to be noticed in Senga pronunciation are:—

(i) a peculiar modified nasal sound, common in one form or another to many Bantu dialects, here represented by *ng'*, and resembling the first *ng* in *singing*,—the *ng* sound not passing on to the vowel following, though forming one syllable with it.

(ii) a preference in prefixes and formative syllables generally for a modified sibilant sound, resembling the sound of *s* in *pleasure* and *vision*, and here represented by *zh* or *zhy*.



(iii) a strong tendency to allow the nasals *m* and *n* to affect the pronunciation of other sounds preceding and following, *m* being represented by *m*, *um*, *mu*, *mw*, *u*, and *w*, and *n* by *n*, *in*, *ny*, *i*, and *y*.

(iv) a marked fondness for contractions, not only of vowels, but of whole syllables and groups of syllables.

(v) the use of *n* and *w* at the beginning of some words apparently at pleasure, but probably as protective of the sound following, or as a reminiscence of an earlier form of it.

Examples of the above will occur in the pages following.

Accent and intonation can of course only be mastered correctly by long familiarity, a quick and scientifically trained ear, or by the use of the phonograph. It appears that, though the penultimate syllable is never treated as a short or unaccented syllable, a clearly marked stress is laid in many, but not hitherto defined, cases on the antepenultimate, a stress which certainly lightens though it does not supersede the regular accent on the penultimate. A long or accented final syllable may be considered a case of a doubled vowel sound.

## CHAPTER II

### NOUNS

NOUNS have, if any prefix, one of the following twelve:—

In the singular: *MU*, *CHI*, *KA*, *LI*, *U*, (*U*)*LU*, *N*.

In the plural: (*W*)*A*, *MI*, *VI*, *TU*, *MA*, *N*.

The prefixes *I* and *ZHI* are used in adjectives and verb-forms agreeing with nouns,—*I* in both singular and plural, *ZHI* in plural only. The prefixes *PA*, *MU*, *KU* may be generally described as locative, and sometimes form with adjectives and verbs expressions equivalent to nouns. *KU* is also the distinctive prefix of the infinitive form of the verb, which is constantly used as a noun.

Nouns may be divided into the following ten classes, each distinguished by a characteristic pair of prefixes, i.e. singular and plural, or by the plural prefix only. The prefixes are here given in their full forms.

CLASS 1.	Sing. <i>MU-</i> or no prefix Plur. ( <i>W</i> ) <i>A-</i>	CLASS 6.	Sing. <i>U-</i> Plur. <i>MA-</i>
" 2.	Sing. <i>MU-</i> Plur. <i>MI-</i>	" 7.	Sing. ( <i>U</i> ) <i>LU-</i> Plur. <i>N-</i>
" 3.	Sing. <i>CHI-</i> Plur. <i>VI-</i>	" 8.	Sing. } <i>N-</i> Plur. } or no prefix
" 4.	Sing. <i>KA-</i> Plur. <i>TU-</i>	To these may be added for convenience—	
" 5.	Sing. <i>LI-</i> or no prefix Plur. <i>MA-</i>	CLASS 9.	Sing. } <i>PA-, MU-, KU-</i> Plur. } (locative)
		" 10.	Sing. } <i>KU-</i> Plur. } (infinitive)

The class of a noun determines the prefix of every adjective and verb-form agreeing with it. These prefixes are here throughout called for convenience Concord-prefixes. Thus the class-prefixes and concord-prefixes of nouns of each class require close attention and separate notice. Under each class an alphabetical list is given of some nouns belonging to it.

**Class 1.** The only invariable characteristic is the prefix *A* in the plural. The singular has either no prefix, or the prefix *MU*. When present, *MU* (in this class only) always implies a human (rational) being. Otherwise, the class includes nouns denoting objects of all kinds, rational, animate, and inanimate.

*MU* is often represented by *M* with a thick sound approaching *UM* before a consonant, and *MW* before a vowel. *A* is heard as *WA* in some words, and usually forms a long *a* with an *a* following, contracts with *e* and (sometimes) *i* into *e*, and with *o* and (sometimes) *u* into *o*.

The concord-prefix of adjectives in general is the same as the class-prefix, i.e. *MU*, *M*, or *MW* in the singular for all nouns of this class, whether possessing the prefix or not, and *WA* or *A* in the plural.

But the pronominal (demonstrative, possessive, and interrogative) adjectives, and a few others, have in the singular the concord-prefix *U*, *W*, *YU*, or *Y*, and in the plural *WA* or *W* (see chap. iv, Pronouns).

The concord-prefix of verbs is in the singular (of the subject) *A*, *WA*, *U*, *W*, (of the object) *MU*, *MW*, *M*, and in the plural (of both subject and object) *A* and sometimes *WA* (see chap. v, Verbs).

Personal Pronouns are treated for purposes of concord as belonging to this class.

## LIST OF NOUNS.

(a) with prefix in the singular.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <i>Mbuntu</i> , a little girl.                        | <i>Msikulu</i> , a grandchild.  |
| <i>Mfuli</i> , a worker in metal, a smith.            | <i>Msimbi</i> , a grown-up girl.  |
| <i>Mkatasi</i> , an idle, lazy person.                | <i>Msuluzi</i> , a guide.   |
| <i>Mkazi</i> , a woman, wife.                         | <i>Mtwali</i> , a carrier, porter.  |
| <i>Mkoka</i> , a fellow tribesman.                    | <i>Mulume</i> , a man (male), husband.  |
| <i>Mkulukazi</i> , a very old person.                 | <i>Mune kwasu</i> ( <i>kwanu, kwao</i> ), my                                  |
| <i>Mkuza</i> , a stranger, foreigner.                 | (your, his) fellow villager.  |
| <i>Mkwasu</i> ( <i>mkwanu, mkwao</i> ), my            | <i>Munecho</i> , a resident, a householder.                                   |
| (your, his) brother.                                  | <i>Muntu</i> (plur. <i>wantu</i> ), a man, person.                            |
| <i>Misa</i> , brother, sister.                        | <i>Muyopa</i> , a coward.   |
| <i>Mlongosi</i> , sister.                             | <i>Muumbi</i> , a potter.   |
| <i>Mlumbwana</i> , a young person, atten-             | <i>Mwana</i> (plur. <i>waana</i> ), a child (of                               |
| dant, follower.                                       | relationship), a person. <i>Mwanalume</i> , a man, male; <i>mwanakazi</i> , a |
| <i>Mwendo</i> , a stranger, guest.                    | woman, female.  |
| <i>Mmpawi</i> , a poor, destitute person.             | <i>Mwine</i> (plur. <i>wene</i> ), an owner, master.                          |
| <i>Mnansi</i> , a friend.                             | <i>Mwulendo</i> , a traveller, one on a jour-                                 |
| <i>Mpala</i> , an unmarried man.                      | ney.  |
| <i>Mpasa</i> , a twin (irreg. plur. <i>amapasa</i> ). | <i>Mtiche</i> , a concubine.  |
| <i>Mpofu</i> , a blind person.                        |   |
| <i>Msaza</i> , a young child.                         |   |

(b) without prefix in the singular.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <i>Achite</i> (same in plural), so-and-so, such a one.        | <i>Kombwe</i> , a cock.                                 |
| <i>Asikulu</i> , a grand-parent, Sir (of respectful address). | <i>Leza</i> , God, sky, thunder.                        |
| <i>Chika</i> , split reed (short lengths) for mats.           | <i>Lumbanungu</i> , giraffe.                            |
| <i>Chimbwi</i> , hyena.                                       | <i>Mbwele</i> , zebra (irreg. plur. <i>achibwele</i> ). |
| <i>Chona</i> , cat.   | <i>Misili</i> , artisan, skilled workman.               |
| <i>Chule</i> , frog.  | <i>Ngansa</i> , piece of bark-cloth.                    |
| <i>Fulu</i> , tortoise.                                       | <i>Pendomelo</i> , (inner) throat.                      |
| <i>Kalulu</i> , rabbit.                                       | <i>Sapi</i> , a lung.                                   |
| <i>Kambuntu</i> , a very little girl.                         | <i>Sasu</i> , a bamboo.                                 |
| <i>Kamenso</i> , an eyewitness.                               | <i>Silawila</i> , a dumb person.                        |
| <i>Kapanda</i> , a pumpkin.                                   | <i>Simulandu</i> , a party in a suit (quarrel, &c.).    |
| <i>Kapolo</i> , a slave.                                      | <i>Sitembo</i> , split reed (long pieces) for mats.     |
| <i>Ko'we</i> , a (kind of) monkey.                            | <i>Tute</i> , cassava (plant and root).                 |
| <i>Kombe</i> , a fishing-net.                                 |   |

**Class 2.** The characteristic prefix is always in the singular *MU*, in the plural *MI*.

*MU* appears in many words as *M*, to be distinguished from *M*

as the initial letter of a root, and from *M* representing the prefix *N* before some consonants.

The concord-prefixes are the same for adjectives of all kinds and for verb-forms, viz. in the singular *U*, and in the plural *I*, i.e. they are the same as the class-prefix without *M*. Before a vowel, *U* is sometimes *W*, and *I* is *Y*. It will be seen that the singular concord-prefix is the same as that of Class 6, and the plural the same as that of the singular of Class 8.

Nouns denoting trees are generally included in this class, though the word meaning tree, *chimuti* (plur. *vimiti*), has the prefix of Class 3.

## LIST OF NOUNS.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <i>Mchela</i> , well, water-hole.                | <i>Mseche</i> , sand.                                      |
| <i>Mchila</i> , tail.                            | <i>Mseko</i> , head-rest.                                  |
| <i>Milochi</i> (plur.), rain.                    | <i>Mselu</i> , share, portion, ration.                     |
| <i>Misinbi</i> (plur.), soot, grime.             | <i>Msensa</i> , armlet (of wire), anklet.                  |
| <i>Mkokola</i> , circle for native hut.          | <i>Mseu</i> , high-road, path to fields.                   |
| <i>Mkono</i> , half yard (measure) of calico.    | <i>Msilensi</i> , plain, flat land.                        |
| <i>Mkosi</i> , neck, throat (external).          | <i>Msinku</i> , sort, kind, amount.                        |
| <i>Mkowa</i> , tribe.                            | <i>Msisi</i> , tendril, rootlet, sucker.                   |
| <i>Mkoso</i> , urine.                            | <i>Msitu</i> , grave.                                      |
| <i>Mkumbi</i> , cloud.                           | <i>Msondo</i> , punting-pole.                              |
| <i>Mkupo</i> , hide, skin (flayed).              | <i>Msonji</i> , shoot (of plant).                          |
| <i>Mkuti</i> , heap, pile.                       | <i>Msozi</i> , a tear.                                     |
| <i>Mkwapa</i> , armpit.                          | <i>Msuka</i> , spike of native hoe.                        |
| <i>Mlandu</i> , trial, debate, argument, reason. | <i>Mtanda</i> , loaf, cake.                                |
| <i>Mlozi</i> , whistle, whistling.               | <i>Mtendele</i> , peace.                                   |
| <i>Mlyango</i> , doorway, entrance.              | <i>Mtengo</i> , price, cost.                               |
| <i>Mnjua</i> , sugarcane.                        | <i>Mtenji</i> , roof.                                      |
| <i>Mnkono</i> , a snore.                         | <i>Mtiko</i> , stick for stirring, stirrer.                |
| <i>Mnolo</i> , whetstone.                        | <i>Mtima</i> , heart, character.                           |
| <i>Mnyanga</i> , tusk (of elephant).             | <i>Mtolo</i> , bale, pack, load.                           |
| <i>Mnyeku</i> , ember (plur. <i>vimnyeku</i> ).  | <i>Mtondo</i> , water-jar.                                 |
| <i>Mono</i> , castor-oil plant.                  | <i>Mtoto</i> , colouring matter, colour, paint, stain.     |
| <i>Moyo</i> , life, vitality.                    | <i>Mtumbwa</i> , quiver.                                   |
| <i>Mpanda</i> , fork of a tree, notch.           | <i>Mtunju</i> , kind, sort, quality.                       |
| <i>Mpandwa</i> , fork of a road.                 | <i>Mukwamba</i> , two yards (measure) of calico, a fathom. |
| <i>Mpaka</i> , boundary.                         | <i>Mulilo</i> , fire.                                      |
| <i>Mpano</i> , toasting-stick.                   | <i>Mulimbo</i> , stake for securing door.                  |
| <i>Mpelu</i> , grindstone (for grain), mill.     | <i>Mulimo</i> , work, labour, employment.                  |
| <i>Mpini</i> , handle (as of hoe).               | <i>Mulingo</i> , amount, total, quantity.                  |
| <i>Msali</i> , stalk, stem.                      | <i>Mulomo</i> , lip, beak, quarrel.                        |
| <i>Msambo</i> , branch (of a tree).              | <i>Mulongo</i> , crowd, collection, flock, herd.           |
| <i>Msampa</i> , a (kind of) trap.                | <i>Muluti</i> , barrel (of gun).                           |
| <i>Msanjo</i> , millet-gathering, harvest time.  |  |

<i>Mumfwi</i> , arrow.	<i>Muuko</i> , a glutton.
<i>Munda</i> , field, plantation, garden.	<i>Muundo</i> , planting-time.
<i>Munga</i> , thorn.	<i>Muungu</i> , pumpkin (plant).
<i>Munse</i> , pestle, pounding pole.	<i>Mushya</i> , female slave.
<i>Munwe</i> , finger.	<i>Mushyu</i> , root.
<i>Munyu</i> , salt.	<i>Mwala</i> , stone, rock (plur. <i>miala</i> ).
<i>Munzi</i> , village, town.	<i>Mwando</i> , string, noose-trap (plur. <i>miando</i> ).
<i>Mupampantali</i> , broad flat surface, flat side.	<i>Mwao</i> , yawn (plur. <i>miao</i> ).
<i>Mushula</i> , sting.	<i>Mwenji</i> , firebrand (plur. <i>mienji</i> ).
<i>Mutali</i> , length, depth, height.	<i>Mwesi</i> , moon, month (plur. <i>miesi</i> ).
<i>Mutende</i> , news, report.	<i>Mwili</i> , body (plur. <i>miili</i> ).
<i>Muto</i> , gravy, broth, soup.	<i>Mwiyeko</i> , jaw (plur. <i>miyeko</i> ).
<i>Mutu</i> , head.	<i>Mzimu</i> , soul, spirit.
<i>Mutumba</i> , width, breadth, thickness.	<i>Mzipa</i> , muscle, sinew.

**Class 3.** The characteristic prefixes are, in the singular *CHI*, before a vowel usually *CH*, and in the plural *VI*, sometimes *VY* before a vowel.

The prefixes of this class, when used distinctively, i. e. in place of or in addition to the ordinary form of a noun, imply relative size or importance, i. e. are Augmentative. When used in addition to another class-prefix, both prefixes take their plural form in the plural.

Thus—*Chimuti*, a tree, plur. *vimiti*.

*Chimwala*, a large stone, plur. *vimiala*.

*Chiluwezi*, a sword, plur. *vimbezi*.

(For Diminutive prefixes, see Class 4.)

The concord-prefixes of this class are the same as the class-prefixes, in all cases.

#### LIST OF NOUNS.

<i>Chaka</i> , time (of occurring), case.	<i>Chikonde</i> , a (single) banana.
<i>Chakulya</i> , food.	<i>Chikonkomwa</i> , egg-shell.
<i>Chakumwa</i> , drink.	<i>Chikope</i> , eyelid.
<i>Chalo</i> , land, country, earth.	<i>Chikowe</i> , belt.
<i>Chansansa</i> , hand.	<i>Chikumo</i> , thumb, toe.
<i>Chao</i> , landing-place.	<i>Chikusi</i> , heap, stack (of grass, &c.).
<i>Chapa</i> , patch, piece put on.	<i>Chikwa</i> , (outer) bark.
<i>Cheche</i> , fence (round a house).	<i>Chikwelelo</i> , ladder.
<i>Chela</i> , iron.	<i>Chila</i> , dancing party, dance.
<i>Chelele</i> , stillness.	<i>Chilai</i> , salutation, greeting.
<i>Chendi</i> , a truth, a fact.	<i>Chilalo</i> , sheath, handle (of knife, &c.).
<i>Chifua</i> , breast (human), chest.	<i>Chilambu</i> , wages, hire, pay.
<i>Chifundulwa</i> , cast skin, slough.	<i>Chilela</i> , cluster, bunch.
<i>Chifupa</i> , bone.	<i>Chilembe</i> , venom, animal poison.
<i>Chigamba</i> , shell (of tortoise, &c.).	<i>Chilembo</i> , mark, cut, figure, letter.
<i>Chikandilo</i> , foot.	<i>Chilimba</i> , stool, seat.
<i>Chikololo</i> , a tobacco-pipe.	<i>Chilimika</i> , year.

- Chilola*, glass, looking-glass.  
*Chilonda*, sore, boil, raw place.  
*Chilumbu*, native string-instrument.  
*Chilupili*, mountain.  
*Chiluutu*, stammering.  
*Chimbala*, bullet.  
*Chimbulumuntula*, trunk (of body, without limbs).  
*Chimeko*, finery, boasting, conceit.  
*Chimfuli*, shade, shadow.  
*Chimuntu*, giant (plur. *viantu*).  
*Chimuti*, tree, pole, board, wood.  
*Chimvwilimvwili*, ghost.  
*Chimwana*, sort, kind, size, amount.  
*Chinka*, cage, coop.  
*Chinkabilo*, mode of existence, state, condition.  
*Chinkuka*, high wind, gale.  
*Chinshawa*, patch of ground, garden-plot.  
*Chinsi*, post (in house wall).  
*Chinso*, face, appearance, complexion.  
*Chinsopwe*, point, tip, pointed stake.  
*Chintu*, a thing, article.  
*Chinyamate*, tomato.  
*Chinsingwa*, ghost.  
*Chipalamba*, open place in forest, glade.  
*Chipamba*, ladle.  
*Chipefi*, fin.  
*Chipembele*, rhinoceros.  
*Chipili*, bundle.  
*Chipinda*, screen, room (compartment in native hut).  
*Chisakulo*, comb (for hair, &c.).  
*Chisalo*, dry, hot season (September, October).  
*Chisampi*, reed mattress.
- Chisanga*, forest, wilderness.  
*Chisanku*, broom, brush.  
*Chisengu*, gully, ravine, water channel.  
*Chisimikizi*, story, narrative.  
*Chisinga*, stump (of tree).  
*Chisusu*, custom, habit.  
*Chitamba*, trunk (of elephant).  
*Chitawelo*, thigh (also *chivelo*).  
*Chitemo*, small garden, cultivated patch.  
*Chitengu*, pool, lake.  
*Chitepo*, leaf.  
*Chitonga*, maize cob, Indian corn.  
*Chitulo*, deep sleep, lethargy.  
*Chitumwa*, charm, talisman.  
*Chitundu*, basket.  
*Chitwa*, where a path starts or stops.  
*Chiuza*, friend.  
*Chizumbo*, nest.  
*Chizunikilo*, lid, cover.  
*Chiwanda*, spirit, disembodied soul.  
*Chiwe*, warmth, heat.  
*Chiwelo*, thigh.  
*Chiweta*, streak, stripe, band (of colour).  
*Chiwi*, *chichiwi*, a crime.  
*Chiya*, box, case, load.  
*Chiyu*, liver.  
*Chizengulile*, giddiness.  
*Chiso*, member (of body), organ, limb.  
*Chokolo*, inheritance.  
*Chuma*, property, possession, wealth.  
*Chumba*, cage, trap, a barren woman.  
*Chungu*, a rubbish-heap.  
*Chuni*, a large bird.  
*Chusi*, smoke.  
*Viswaswa*, rubbish (no sing.).

**Class 4.** The characteristic prefixes are, in the singular *KA*, in the plural *TU*.

*KA* with *a* following forms a long *a*, contracts with *e* and (sometimes) *i* to *e*, and with *o* and (sometimes) *u* to *o*. *TU* becomes often *TW* before a vowel.

These prefixes are regularly used to denote what is relatively small or unimportant, i.e. as diminutives, when substituted for or followed by another prefix. In this latter case, both prefixes take their plural form in the plural, as in Class 3.

The concord-prefixes are the same throughout as the class-prefixes.

## LIST OF NOUNS.

<i>Kaingo</i> , leopard.	<i>Kasiosio</i> , chicken.
<i>Kakolo</i> , ditch, trench.	<i>Kasu</i> , avarice.
<i>Kakonyokonyo</i> , elbow.	<i>Kasususu</i> , butterfly.
<i>Kakungulu</i> , whirlwind.	<i>Kaswaswaila</i> , by-path.
<i>Kalishya</i> , scorpion.	<i>Katemo</i> , axe.
<i>Kamana</i> , river.	<i>Katende</i> , heel.
<i>Kambwili</i> , hoe.	<i>Katiwi</i> , breast (of animal).
<i>Kameto</i> , razor.	<i>Kawaliwali</i> , lightning.
<i>Kankolo</i> , stream (plur. <i>tumikolo</i> ).	<i>Kawelewele</i> , whisper.
<i>Kamuntu</i> , dwarf (plur. <i>tuantu</i> ).	<i>Kawindi</i> , obstruction, barrier.
<i>Kanwala</i> , small stone (plur. <i>tumiala</i> ).	<i>Kayeko</i> , chin.
<i>Kanyenda</i> , native needle.	<i>Kazua</i> , daytime, daylight, sunshine.
<i>Kapili</i> , heap, mound, hillock.	<i>Koni</i> , bird (i. e. <i>kauni</i> , plur. <i>tuni</i> ).
<i>Kapondo</i> , enemy, highway robber.	<i>Tulo</i> , sleep (no sing.).
<i>Kaponta</i> , cat-fish, 'barbel.'	<i>Tumbwili</i> , covetousness (no sing.).
<i>Kasambala</i> , calf (of leg).	

**Class 5.** The characteristic is the prefix *LI*, if any, in the singular, and *MA* in the plural. But most nouns of this class drop *LI* and are used without prefix in the singular. The plural prefix *MA* is also the plural prefix of Class 6.

The concord-prefixes are in the singular *LI* throughout, and in the plural *A*. Before vowels *LI* is sometimes heard as *LY*. *A* is heard as *WA* in the pronominal adjectives and a few others, and forms contractions as in the plural of Class 1.

A very few nouns with *KU* as the prefix and concord-prefix in the singular (and *MA* in the plural, as above) are for convenience placed with this class. In other dialects, they form a separate class.

## LIST OF NOUNS.

<i>Fua</i> , one of three small piles of earth, forming a native fireplace.	<i>Lisambi</i> , egg.
<i>Fumo</i> , spear.	<i>Lito</i> , earth, soil (irreg. plur. <i>vilito</i> ).
<i>Fundo</i> , knot, joint.	<i>Litole</i> , calf (of cow).
<i>Fupa</i> , skull.	<i>Liwambo</i> , rib.
<i>Konde</i> , banana (plant).	<i>Lizu</i> , sound, cry, word.
<i>Koswe</i> , rat.	<i>Lokolo</i> , verandah, space under the eaves of a native hut—commonly heard in the locative form <i>mlokolo</i> .
<i>Kwete</i> , a joke.	<i>Mpata</i> , valley.
<i>Linga</i> , stockade, fortification.	<i>Ndala</i> , platform, raised watchman's stage.
<i>Linso</i> , liso, eye (plur. <i>menso</i> , i. e. <i>mainso</i> ).	<i>Ng'ala</i> , feather.
<i>Linu</i> , tooth (plur. <i>menu</i> , i. e. <i>mainu</i> ).	

<i>Ng'anda</i> , house (plur. often the same).	<i>Silya</i> , dry land, bank of river, coast.
<i>Ngawa</i> , debt.	<i>Sisi</i> , a hair (human).
<i>Nkololwa</i> , cough.	<i>Sonko</i> , tax, toll, tribute, contribution.
<i>Nsumbu</i> , island.	<i>Tako</i> , haunch, buttock.
<i>Papiko</i> , wing.	<i>Tenga</i> , pool, pond.
<i>Pewa</i> , shoulder.	<i>Teto</i> , reed, tobacco-pipe.
<i>Pofu</i> , bubble, froth.	<i>Tuvi</i> , solid excreta, dung, droppings.
<i>Poso</i> , ration, food money.	<i>Toto</i> , spot, mark.
<i>Samiko</i> , ornament, fitting (of house).	<i>Tukuta</i> , sweat.
<i>Sauko</i> , spring, source of river, well.	<i>Uloo</i> , fish-hook.
<i>Sawi</i> , fish.	<i>Uta</i> , bow.
<i>Senga</i> , forest, jungle.	<i>Vumo</i> , abdomen, stomach, womb.
<i>Sewelo</i> , a game, play.	<i>Wala</i> , spot (of colour).
<i>Shamo</i> , failure, loss, bad luck.	<i>Ziko</i> , hearth, fireplace.
<i>Shuko</i> , success, gain, good luck, advantage.	<i>Zina</i> , name.
	<i>Ziwa</i> , breast (of a woman).
	<i>Zua</i> , sun, day.

Three nouns (at least) have the prefix *ku* in the singular and *ma* in the plural, viz. :—

<i>Kwanja</i> , arm, plur. <i>manja</i> .	<i>Kwendo</i> , leg, foot, plur. <i>mendo</i> , i. e.
<i>Kwatu</i> , ear (of body), plur. <i>matu</i> .	<i>maendo</i> .

*Kungupya*, a spark, has plur. *vikungupya*.

**Class 6.** The characteristic prefixes are, in the singular *U*, and in the plural *MA*. *U* often becomes *W* before a vowel.

The concord-prefixes are throughout, in the singular *U*, i. e. the same as in the singular of Class 2, and in the plural *A*, i. e. the same as in the plural of Class 5 (see above, Classes 2 and 5).

Most nouns of this class are either abstract in meaning and require no plural, or are used in the plural form mainly or only. These two groups are distinguished in the following list. Some of those in the second group might be placed more correctly under Class 5.

#### LIST OF NOUNS.

<i>Uchende</i> , adultery.	<i>Ukwa</i> , envy.
<i>Uchiusa</i> , friendship.	<i>Ulolo</i> , bridge.
<i>Ufipa</i> , blackness, darkness.	<i>Ululu</i> , acidity, sourness.
<i>Ufumu</i> , chieftainship, freedom.	<i>Ulumate</i> , sharpness (of edge).
<i>Ufupi</i> , shortness, nearness.	<i>Ulungu</i> , beads.
<i>Ufwiti</i> , sorcery, witchcraft.	<i>Unga</i> , flour, meal.
<i>Uipa</i> , evil, wickedness.	<i>Ung'anga</i> , skill, art, workmanship.
<i>Ukali</i> , severity, cruelty, anger, bitterness.	<i>Upayi</i> , murder, bloodshed, slaughter.
<i>Ukamenso</i> , eyewitness, first-hand evidence.	<i>Upombo</i> , fornication.
	<i>Upono</i> , enmity, feud.
	<i>Upusa</i> , folly, naughtiness.



*Usako*, a hair (of animal).  
*Usali*, meanness, self-abasement.  
*Usalu*, thread.  
*Usenga*, husk (irreg. plur. *viusenga*).  
*Usiku*, night, night-time.  
*Usilu*, madness, indecency.  
*Usita*, bartering, trade, commerce.  
*Utali*, length, tallness, distance.  
*Utani*, selfishness, niggardliness.  
*Utonto*, smallness, paucity, childhood.  
*Utontole*, weakness, exhaustion.  
*Utua*, whiteness, purity.  
*Utumba*, blade (of knife, &c.), flat side.  
*Utume*, service, employment.  
*Uuchi*, honey.  
*Uwato*, a canoe.  
*Uweme*, goodness, beauty.  
*Uwende*, mortar (wooden, for pounding).  
*Uwenyi*, falsehood, falseness.  
*Uwi*, badness, evil, wickedness.  
*Uyopa*, fear, cowardice.  
*Uzimbwa*, beads (also irreg. plur. *nzimbwa*).  
*Uzu*, grass (plur. *mauzu*, and *viuzu*).  
*Walwa*, native beer.  
*Wangu*, poison, a scar.

*Wonga*, gunpowder.

*Mafna*, pus, matter.  
*Mafuta*, oil, fat.  
*Mailo*, yesterday, to-morrow.  
*Mainza*, rainy season (November to March).  
*Makani*, talk, gossip.  
*Makosa*, strength, health.  
*Mala*, intestines.  
*Malilo*, mourning.  
*Malisau*, shot.  
*Malosa*, enchantment, calamity.  
*Mame*, dew.  
*Mampindwe*, branch roads, forks in road.  
*Mamwila*, echo.  
*Mankalilo*, state, condition (cf. sing. *chinkalilo*).  
*Mankwala*, medicine, drugs.  
*Mansonzo*, leprosy.  
*Manzi*, water.  
*Mapila*, millet.  
*Mariri*, bedstead.  
*Mata*, spittle.  
*Matika*, mud.  
*Mawa*, morning, to-morrow.  
*Maweke*, a small (kind of) grain.  
*Maziko*, funeral, burial.

**Class 7.** The characteristic prefixes are, in the singular *LU*, and in the plural *N*. *LU* often becomes *LW* before a vowel. The combination of *N* with the initial sound of various roots produces a number of euphonic changes in the plural, as noted in the following list.

A few nouns of this class have the prefix *ULU* for *LU*. A large number retain *LU* in the plural, and then take the prefix *MA*.

The concord-prefixes are throughout, in the singular *LU*, and in the plural *ZHI* for all plurals in *N*; but plurals in *MA* take the concord-prefix *A*, as in Classes 5 and 6.

#### LIST OF NOUNS.

<i>Luanza</i> (plur. <i>mbanza</i> , i.e. <i>n-(w)anza</i> ), open space in front of a house.	<i>Luovu</i> (plur. <i>mbovu</i> , i.e. <i>n-(w)ovu</i> ), cheek.
<i>Lunyungu</i> (plur. <i>nyungu</i> , i.e. <i>n-nyungu</i> ), pumpkin (fruit).	<i>Lupango</i> (plur. <i>mpango</i> , for <i>n-pango</i> ), property.
<i>Lunshyala</i> (plur. <i>nshyala</i> ), claw, nail.	<i>Lupasa</i> (plur. <i>mpasa</i> ), mat of split reeds.

<i>Lusondo</i> , (plur. <i>nsondo</i> ), roof-pole, rafter.	<i>Uluwezi</i> (plur. <i>mbezi</i> ), knife.
<i>Luzizi</i> (plur. <i>nzizi</i> ), bark-strip.	<i>Lukungu</i> (no plur.), dust.
<i>Uluimbo</i> (plur. <i>nzimbo</i> ), song.	<i>Lona</i> (no plur.), purpose, intention.
	<i>Lunsa</i> (no plur.), sweetness (of taste).

The following retain *LU* in the plural, in one case *ULW*, and prefix *MA*.

<i>Lua</i> , yard, enclosure, flower.	<i>Lupuno</i> , loop, noose.
<i>Lucheche</i> , infant, baby.	<i>Lusa</i> , dirt, filth.
<i>Lufwo</i> , death.	<i>Lusaka</i> , thicket, jungle.
<i>Lulilo</i> , platter, flat dish.	<i>Lusanso</i> , strainer, sieve.
<i>Lulimi</i> , tongue.	<i>Lusengo</i> , horn (plur. sometimes <i>n-sengo</i> ).
<i>Lung'a</i> , crack.	<i>Lusipa</i> , blood-vessel.
<i>Lunsindi</i> , looseness of bowels.	<i>Luso</i> , information, knowledge.
<i>Lupako</i> , bee-hive.	<i>Lusungu</i> , pity.
<i>Lupande</i> , one yard (measure) of calico.	<i>Ulwendo</i> , travelling party, journey.
<i>Lupi</i> , palm of hand.	
<i>Lupili</i> , hill.	

**Class 8.** The characteristic prefix is *N*, both in the singular and plural.

But *N* is for euphonic reasons represented by *M* before some roots, in some words it seems optional, and in many is dropped altogether. Thus this class may be said to consist of all nouns which do not change in the plural.

The concord-prefixes are throughout, in the singular *I*, i.e. the same as in the plural of Class 2, and in the plural *ZHI*, i.e. the same as in the plural of Class 7.

## LIST OF NOUNS.

<i>Awisi</i> , father.	<i>Mboo</i> , buffalo.
<i>Chelele</i> , stillness, silence.	<i>Mbu</i> ( <i>imbu</i> ), mosquito.
<i>Choncho</i> , spoon.	<i>Mbulu</i> , lizard.
<i>Fulele</i> , fog, mist.	<i>Mbuto</i> , seed.
<i>Futi</i> , gun.	<i>Mbuyu</i> , calabash, fruit of baobab.
<i>Fwaka</i> , tobacco.	<i>Mbusi</i> , goat.
<i>Kafi</i> , paddle.	<i>Mbwa</i> ( <i>imbwa</i> ), dog.
<i>Kofilo</i> , cap.	<i>Mbwansi</i> , sweet potato.
<i>Mbali</i> , side.	<i>Mbwewa</i> , field-mouse.
<i>Mbazo</i> , adze.	<i>Mbwina</i> , pitfall (for game).
<i>Mbelele</i> , sheep.	<i>Mfungo</i> , civet cat.
<i>Mbete</i> , cup (gourd).	<i>Mkaka</i> , milk.
<i>Mbifi</i> , villain, rogue.	<i>Mkokola</i> , knee.
<i>Mbili</i> , rumour, fame.	<i>Mlopa</i> , blood.
<i>Mbolyo</i> , hole, pit.	<i>Mpamvu</i> , strength, force, energy.
<i>Mbongwe</i> , a (kind of) monkey.	<i>Mpapa</i> , skin.
<i>Mboni</i> , pupil (of eye).	<i>Mpepo</i> , wind, cold.

- Mpuni*, forehead.  
*Mpuno*, nose.  
*Mpuye*, breath.  
*Mvukuto*, bellows.  
*Mvula*, rain.  
*Mvuu*, hippopotamus.  
*Mwano*, hearing, faith, obedience, sympathy.  
*Mwui*, grey hair.  
*Mwano*, disobedience.  
*Mwavi*, poison, ordeal by poison.  
*Mweso*, fear.  
*Nchelwa*, brick.  
*Nchilikilo*, prop, buttress.  
*Ndalama*, cash, money.  
*Ndembo*, tattoo marks, carving.  
*Ndevu*, beard.  
*Ndiwo*, relish, flavouring (of any kind).  
*Ndumiko*, cupping-instrument.  
*Nfumu*, chief, head man, a free person.  
*Nfwiti*, sorcerer, wizard, witch.  
*Ng'anda*, house (plur. also *ma-ng'anda*).  
*Ng'anga*, skilled workman, artisan, doctor.  
*Ng'oma*, drum, dance.  
*Ng'ombe*, cow, ox, cattle.  
*Nguluwe*, pig.  
*Nguwe*, rust.  
*Njala*, hunger, famine.  
*Njazi*, curse, oath.  
*Njivi*, thief.  
*Njota*, thirst, drought.  
*Nkalamu*, lion.  
*Nkana*, share, portion.  
*Nkanda*, leather, strap.  
*Nkanga*, guinea-fowl.  
*Nkansa*, harshness, hot temper.  
*Nkasi*, mucuna (stinging) bean.  
*Nkomwa*, wallet, bag (of skin).  
*Nkole*, knobbed club, prisoner of war.  
*Nkondo*, war.  
*Nkonyo*, fist, knuckle.  
*Nkope*, eyelash.  
*Nkuku*, fowl.  
*Nkunda*, pigeon.  
*Nkungu*, thief.  
*Nkuni*, firewood.  
*Nongo*, cooking-vessel.  
*Nsanji*, a (kind of) monkey.  
*Nsansa*, bog, marsh.  
*Nsatu*, python.  
*Nsembe*, cleaned grain.  
*Nshawa*, ground-nut.  
*Nsilo*, fence.  
*Nsini*, wrinkles.  
*Nsoni*, shame, modesty, pity, shyness.  
*Ntalu*, cooking-vessel.  
*Ntamfu*, sap, juice.  
*Ntamu*, hardship, calamity.  
*Ntandala*, large star.  
*Ntanto*, roller.  
*Ntekwe*, snuff-box.  
*Ntenda*, disease, sickness, pestilence.  
*Ntonji*, cotton.  
*Ntumba*, granary, store-house.  
*Ntumbi*, carcass, carrion.  
*Ntutu*, heap, pile.  
*Nwena*, crocodile.  
*Nyali*, candle, lamp.  
*Nyama*, animal, flesh.  
*Ayambo*, bait.  
*Nyamsanche*, twig.  
*Nyengo*, time (point, or period).  
*Nyenyeezi*, small star.  
*Nyina*, mother.  
*Nyimba*, india-rubber.  
*Nyula*, calico.  
*Nyunji*, porcupine.  
*Nzelu*, sense, wisdom, intellect, consciousness, plan, purpose, meaning.  
*Nzensele*, bag, wallet (of grain).  
*Nshama*, a (kind of) ground-nut.  
*Nsimu*, bee.  
*Nzovu*, elephant.  
*Sela*, wax, comb.  
*Siku*, day (period of twenty-four hours).  
*Wama*, mother.  
*Wata*, father.  
*Zungo*, shout, derision.

Class 9. The characteristic prefixes are *PA*, *MU*, *KU*, which form with nouns, adjectives, and verbs expressions equivalent to

nouns, singular and plural. The concord-prefixes are the same as the class-prefixes throughout. The one word *malo*, place, is treated as a *PA-* noun of this class.

**Class 10.** The verbal (infinitive) noun with the prefix *KU* is in very common use, and forms this class. The concord-prefix is also *KU* throughout. (For other nouns with prefix *KU*, see Class 5).

#### FORMATION OF NOUNS.

When nouns and verbs have a common root, forms are taken by the noun which may be illustrated by the following examples:—

- Class 1.** *Mtwali*, a carrier; *twala*, carry.  
*Msuluzi*, a guide; *sulula*, guide.  
*Mtume*, a messenger; *tuma*, send.  
*Mtwendo*, a stranger; *yenda*, go.
- Class 2.** *Msanjo*, millet-gathering; *sanja*, gather.  
*Milochi*, heavy rain; *loka*, *lokwa*, rain.  
*Mchitilo*, action; *chita*, do, Ap. *chitila*.
- Class 3.** *Chisimikizi*, story; *simikisha*, tell stories.  
*Chilembo*, a mark; *lemba*, mark, carve.  
*Chomela* (i. e. *cha kumela*), a plant; *mela*, grow.
- Class 4.** *Kameto*, a razor; *meta*, shave.  
*Kawaliwali*, lightning; *wala*, shine.
- Class 5.** *Sanko*, a spring; *sanka*, rise (of a river).  
*Uloo*, fish-hook; *loola*, angle.  
*Shamo*, failure; *shama*, fail.
- Class 6.** *Uchende*, adultery; *chinda*, ravish.  
*Utume*, service; *tuma*, employ.  
*Upayi*, murder; *paya*, kill.  
*Usita*, commerce; *sita*, barter.  
*Ulalo*, a bridge; *lala*, lie, be laid.  
*Mafina*, pus, matter; *fina*, squeeze.  
*Makosa*, strength; *kosa*, be strong.  
*Maziko*, burial; *zika*, bury.
- Class 7.** *Lufwo*, death; *fwa*, die.  
*Ulwendo*, journey; *yenda*, go.
- Class 8.** *Ndembo*, tattoo marks; *lemba*, mark.  
*Mwawano*, hearing; *mwawa*, hear.  
*Nkope*, eyelash; *kopezha*, wink.

A few nouns appear to be compounds, e. g. *pendomelo*, throat (passage); *chimbulumuntila*, trunk without limbs; *mupampantali*, broad flat surface; *simulandu*, party in a suit.

## SUMMARY OF CONCORD-PREFIXES.

**Class 1.** Sing. *U (W)*, *YU (Y)*, for pronominal adjectives (and a few others).

*MU (MW, M)*, for all other adjectives.

*A, WA, U (W)*, for verbs, of the subject.

*MU (MW, M)*, for verbs, of the object.

Plur. *WA (W)*, for pronominal adjectives (&c.).

*A, WA*, for all other cases.

**Class 2.** Sing. *U (W)*, }  
Plur. *I (Y)*, } in all cases.

**Class 3.** Sing. *CHI (CH)* }  
Plur. *VI (VY)* } "

**Class 4.** Sing. *KA* }  
Plur. *TU (TW)* } "

**Class 5.** Sing. *LI (LY)* }  
Plur. *WA (W)*, for pronominal adjectives.

*A*, for all other cases.

**Class 6.** Sing. *U (W)*, }  
Plur. *A, WA*, } in all cases.

**Class 7.** Sing. *LU (LY)*, }  
Plur. *ZHI (ZHY, ZH)*, } in all cases.

(For plurals in *MA*, the Concord-prefixes are the same as in Classes 5 and 6 plural.)

**Class 8.** Sing. *I (Y)*.  
Plur. *ZHI (ZHY, ZH)*.

**Class 9.** Sing. and Plur. *PA, KU (KW), MU (MW)*, throughout.

**Class 10.** Sing. and Plur. *KU (KW)*.

*I* in *I, LI, VI*, and *U* in *U, TU, LU*, commonly keep their vowel-sound even before vowels, and *A* in *PA, KA* is not wholly elided.

## CHAPTER III

### ADJECTIVES

ADJECTIVES may be conveniently distinguished as (1) Adjectives proper, (2) Pronominal adjectives, and are supplemented by various expressions equivalent to adjectives.

1. Adjectives proper are not numerous. They are brought into concord with nouns by prefixing the distinctive concord-prefix of the noun qualified, i. e. in the singular *M(U)*, *U*, *CHI*, *KA*, *LI*, *LU*, *I*, and in the plural, *A*, *I*, *VI*, *TU*, *ZHI*, or for both singular and plural, *PA*, *MU*, *KU*, according to the class to which the noun belongs (see chap. ii, Nouns).

Thus the adjective *-kulu*, large, has the following concord-forms.

		Singular.	Plural.
CLASS	1.	<i>Muntu</i> (man) <i>mkulu</i> .	<i>Wantu akulu</i> .
"	2.	<i>Munzi</i> (village) <i>ukulu</i> .	<i>Minsi ikulu</i> .
"	3.	<i>Chintu</i> (thing) <i>chikulu</i> .	<i>Vintu vikulu</i> .
"	4.	<i>Kamana</i> (river) <i>kakulu</i> .	<i>Tumana tukulu</i> .
"	5.	<i>Sawi</i> (fish) <i>likulu</i> .	<i>Masawi akulu</i> .
"	6.	<i>Usako</i> (hair) <i>ukulu</i> .	<i>Masako akulu</i> .
"	7.	<i>Luovu</i> (cheek) <i>lukulu</i> .	<i>Mbovu zhikulu</i> .
"	8.	<i>Nyama</i> (animal) <i>ikulu</i> .	<i>Nyama zhikulu</i> .
"	9.	<i>Pakulu</i> , <i>mukulu</i> , <i>kukulu</i> ,	} Singular and Plural.
"	10.	<i>Kukotwa</i> (feast) <i>kukulu</i> .	

Personal pronouns are treated, for purposes of concord, as nouns of Class I.

#### LIST OF ADJECTIVES.

The following are the root-forms without prefix :—

<p><i>-amene</i>, very, same.  <i>-anjele</i>, left-hand.  <i>-eka</i>, alone, only.  <i>-endi</i>, true, real.  <i>-fipa</i>, black, dark.  <i>-fupi</i>, short.  <i>-ine</i>, very, self.  <i>-ipa</i>, bad, evil.  <i>-iyakwe</i>, more (like it), other (of its kind), similar (to it). (So with the forms <i>-iyangu</i>, <i>-iyako</i>, <i>-iyetu</i>, <i>-iyenu</i>, <i>-iyao</i>.)</p>	<p><i>-kali</i>, severe, angry, sharp (to taste, touch).  <i>-kazi</i>, female.  <i>-kulu</i>, large, great.  <i>-lume</i>, male.  <i>-lwele</i>, sick, ill.  <i>-mbi</i>, other, different.  <i>-nana</i>, growing, green (of plants).  <i>Nga-</i>, real, genuine, thorough, ideal.                  (See below.)  <i>-nyinji</i>, many, much.  <i>-onse</i>, all, every, whole.</p>
--	--

-*feneme*, upright, steep.  
 -*pepo*, light (in weight), easy.

-*sali*, base, degraded.

-*silu*, mad, indecent.

-*swela*, red, light (in colour), bare,  
 exposed.

-*tali*, long, high, deep, tall, distant.

-*tono*, small, little.

-*tua*, white, pure, clean.

-(*y*)*umo*, dry, hard.

-*weme*, good, nice, pretty, pleasing.

-*wi*, bad, evil.

-*wisi*, fresh, raw, unripe.

*Nga* takes the concord-prefixes at the end, e.g. *muntu ngaye*, a true man, a hero, *kukolwa ngako*, a magnificent feast.

Concord-prefixes are not changed (i.e. by elision or contraction) before adjectival roots beginning with *i* and *u*, except that the *a* of a prefix combines with the *i* of *-ine* to form *e* (*wene*, not *aine*). *-amene*, *-onse*, and *-eka* take the concord-forms of pronominal adjectives.

2. Pronominal adjectives, i.e. those called demonstrative, possessive, and interrogative (see chap. iv, Pronouns).

The concord-prefixes of the demonstratives for nouns of Class I are in the singular *WA*, *YU*, or *U*, and in the plural *WA*, *A*, e.g. *wamuntu*, *umuntu*, the man, *muntu uyu*, this man, *muntu uyo* (*uno*, *ula*), that man. Those of the possessives for Class I are *U*, *W*, for both singular and plural, i.e. *wangu*, *wako*, *wakwe*, *wasu*, *wanu*, *wao*; and of the interrogatives *WA* (sometimes *YU*, *UU*) in the singular, *WA* in the plural, e.g. *muntu wani* and *wanji* (rarely *yuni*, *unji*), *wantu wani*, *wanji*, and *wangana*.

The adjectives proper, *-ine*, *-eka*, *-amene*, *-onse*, besides taking the concord-prefixes of the possessive adjectives, i.e. *U* and *W*, have some special forms of concord with the personal pronouns, thus:—

Singular.

*Neo neka*, I alone.

*Weo weka*, you alone.

*Yove yeka*, he alone.

Plural.

*Seo seka*, *sonse*, we alone, all.

*Mweo mweka*, *monse*, you alone, all.

*Ove weka*, *wonse*, they alone, all.

3. The place of adjectives is freely supplied in the following ways:—

(1) By a noun preceded by the preposition *-a*, of, with the concord-prefix required by the noun qualified.

Thus *muntu wa nzulu*, a wise man; *manzi a chiwe*, warm water; *nyengo zha kale*, ancient times.

The verbal (infinitive) noun is very frequently thus used, and in this case the *-a* of the preposition contracts with the *ku* of the

infinitive, forming *-o*, unless the verb-root is monosyllabic. Hence the constant occurrence of forms consisting of *o* followed by a verb-stem and used adjectivally.

Thus *muntu olema*, a rich man; *nzizi zhyokosa*, strong bark-ropes; but *ng'ombe ya kufwa*, a dead cow.

(2) By a noun preceded by *-na* with the proper concord-prefix of verb-forms (see chap. v, Verbs), *-na* being equivalent to 'having, possessing.'

Thus *muntu ena chuma*, a wealthy man; *chimuti china minga*, a thorny tree.

(3) By any finite verb-form in the indicative mood with the proper concord-prefix, such forms being used as equivalent to a relative sentence (see chap. vii, Notes on Syntax). Such verb-form, if that of the present indefinite, is really identical with (1) above mentioned.

Thus *ng'ombe iyo ilufwile*, the dead cow; *efwanga ng'ombe ilufwile*, he came upon a dead cow; *uluwezi ulu lwitayika*, the lost knife.

Different tense-forms will often supply equivalents for different adjectives. Thus *kamana kozula*, a rising river; *kamana kazula*, or *kaluzule*, a full, flooded river.

#### Degrees of Comparison.

Equivalents of 'more' and 'most' with adjectives may be supplied by:—

(1) Emphasis, thus, *ichi chikulu*, this is the large one, i.e. the larger or largest.

(2) Using *kuli*, 'as compared with,' or *kupula*, 'to surpass, excelling,' after the adjective,—thus, *ichi chikulu kuli chila*, this is larger than that, *ichi chikulu kupula vyonse*, this is the largest of all.

#### NUMERALS.

Only six numeral roots are in common use, and are as follows.

Noun.	Adjective.	Adverb.
<i>Kamo</i> , one.	<i>-mo</i> .	<i>Kamo</i> , once.
<i>Tuwili</i> , two.	<i>-wili</i> .	<i>Kawili</i> , twice.
<i>Tutatu</i> , three.	<i>-tatu</i> .	<i>Katatu</i> , three times.
<i>Tune</i> , four.	<i>-ne</i> .	<i>Kane</i> , four times.
<i>Tusano</i> , five.	<i>-sano</i> .	<i>Kasano</i> , five times.
<i>Kumi</i> , ten.	<i>Kumi</i> .	<i>Kakumi</i> , ten times.



All other numbers are expressed by using these. Thus *tusano na kamo*, six; *kumi na kamo*, eleven; *makumi awili*, twenty; *makumi kumi*, a hundred. The adverbs may also be expressed by using *chaka*, thus *chaka chimo*, once; *vyaka viwili*, twice, &c. The adjectives take the usual concord-prefixes of other adjectives.

*Zana* is sometimes used for, a hundred.

The ordinal adjectives are expressed by *-otatika*, first, *-a kawili*, second, *-a katatu*, third, and so on; the adverbs by *potatika*, firstly, *pa kawili*, secondly, and so on.

## CHAPTER IV

### PRONOUNS.

THE only pronouns proper are the six personal, and one interrogative, but the demonstrative, possessive, and interrogative adjectives are noticed here, and also the reflexive particle or prefix. For relatives and relative sentences, see chap. vii (Notes on Syntax).

#### 1. Personal Pronouns.

Singular, *Neo*, I.

*Weo*, you.

*Yove, iwo*, he, she.

Plural, *Seo*, we.

*Mweo*, you.

*Ove, awo*, they.

For purposes of concord, these are regarded as nouns of Class I. It, they, when not relating to persons, are expressed, if at all, by a demonstrative.

When combined with *na*, also, even, too, and with *ni* (for emphasis), the above become:—

Singular, *Nane*.

*Nawe*.

*Naye*.

Similarly, *Nine*, it is I.

Plural, *Nase*.

*Namwe*.

*Nawo*.

*Niwe*, it is you, &c.

In addressing, or even alluding to persons, the plural as the form of courtesy is always preferred, and often the plural of the third person. Thus an ordinary form of courteous salutation is, *Taone*, i. e. *tiwaone*, may we see them? i. e. may I presume to notice you?

The acknowledgement is, *Taoneka*, i. e. *tiaoneka*, we are to be seen i. e. I am willing you should take notice of me.

2. The one interrogative pronoun proper is the indefinite *tiani*? what? how much? how? The following are adjectives, but often used without a noun expressed:—*Chinji*? i. e. *chintu chinji*, what? how? which? *wani*? i. e. *muntu wani*, who? *lini*? i. e. *zua lini*, when? *kuni*? where? *Ku* is more distinctively locative in meaning than *pa*, though *malo*, place, requires *pa* as concord-prefix. *Mlandu wanji*? *ni chinji*? expresses, why? With these may be conveniently noticed *-nji*? of what sort? what kind of —? *-ngana*? how many —?

The interrogative *-ni*? what? seems seldom used except as above.

### 3. Demonstratives.

There are five forms which may be classed as demonstratives, and arranged in order of their distinctive force as follows:—

(1) The weakest demonstrative form, corresponding to the English definite article 'the,' but often better translated by a possessive, 'my, your, his,' &c., consists of the proper concord-prefix of a noun prefixed to the noun itself, thus:—

	Singular.		Plural.
CLASS 1.	<i>Umuntu</i> ,	} the man.	<i>Awantu</i> ,
	<i>Wamuntu</i> ,		<i>Wawantu</i> ,
CLASS 2.	<i>Umunzi</i> , the village.		<i>Iminzi</i> , the villages.
	And so on, <i>-inyina</i> , his mother, &c.		

This form of demonstrative is in fact in many nouns a reduplication of the class-prefix, the other four forms are adjectival.

(2) The second form, corresponding to English 'this,' and indicating relative nearness, consists of the concord-prefix detached with its characteristic vowel prefixed to itself. It may be regarded as the prefix reduplicated in a shortened form. Thus:—

	Singular.		Plural.
CLASS 1.	<i>Muntu uyu</i> , this man.		<i>Wantu awa</i> , these men.
CLASS 2.	<i>Munzi uu</i> (or, <i>uyu</i> ), this village.		<i>Minzi ii</i> (or, <i>iyi</i> ), these villages.
	And so on, <i>-ichi</i> , <i>ivi</i> , <i>aka</i> , <i>utu</i> , <i>ili</i> , <i>ulu</i> , <i>izhi</i> , <i>apa</i> , <i>umu</i> , <i>uku</i> .		

(3) The third form, indicating reference or middle distance, and translateable by 'this' or 'that,' consists of the second form with *o* for *u* as its final vowel, i. e. *uyo*, *awo*, *iyu*, *icho*, *ivyo*, *ako*, &c.

(4) The fourth form is the same in meaning as the third, and consists of the concord-prefix followed by *-no*, i.e. *uno* (*yuno*), *wano*, *ino*, *chino*, *kano*, *tuno*, &c.

(5) The fifth form, denoting relative distance and corresponding to the English 'that,' consists of the concord-prefix followed by *-la*, i.e. *ula*, *wala*, *ila*, *chila*, *vila*, *kala*, *tula*, &c.

The concord-prefix affixed to *ni*, or *n*, is also used as a slightly emphasized demonstrative for all classes, i.e. not only *naye*, it is he, *nawo*, it is they, but *ntu*, *nizhi*, *nka*, &c. Thus, *tupondo ntu tuichita*, they were enemies who did it, enemies did it; *nyama nizhi zholuma*, it is animals that bite.

4. The reflexive pronoun is represented by the syllable *li* prefixed to the root of the verb for all persons and numbers. The reflexive force of *li* is strengthened by using *-eka*, or *-ine*, in proper concord-form after the verb. Thus *elichita mwine yeka*, he hurt his own self.

5. For the way in which relative pronouns and sentences are represented, see chap. vii (Notes on Syntax).

## CHAPTER V

### VERBS

THE following account of verbs in Senga may require considerable additions and corrections when the dialect is more fully known.

In all their general features they appear to resemble closely verbs of other Bantu dialects. Thus, the simplest form of a verb is found in the imperative singular, or in the infinitive mood by removing the prefix *ku*. Each verb-root has a group of verb-stems, commonly called simple, applied, causal, reciprocal, and so on, and distinguished by the syllable following the root. Each verb-stem has a negative as well as an affirmative form of conjugation, with a characteristic negative prefix, and also a neuter and passive voice. The subjunctive (or subjective) mood is distinguished from

the indicative by its final vowel, and the infinitive by its prefix. Every verb has a tense-system, indicating by prefixes and tense-signs differences of time, number, and person, as well as the class of subject and object, and enriched by the use of auxiliaries.

These features are here briefly illustrated by examples from a few common verbs.

*Summary of principal verb-forms.*

*KATA*, hold.

INDICATIVE.		<i>Kanikata,</i>
Presents,	<i>Nukata</i> (1 Pers. Sing.), <i>Nili kunkata, nilinkata,</i> <i>Nti kunkata.</i>	<i>Nkukata.</i>
Perfects,	<i>Nakata,</i> <i>Nichakata,</i> <i>Nilukate,</i> <i>Nasila (ku)kata.</i>	Imperfects, <i>Nenzokata,</i> <i>Nenzokate.</i>
Pasts,	<i>Nikata,</i> <i>Nichikata</i> (in narrative):— <i>Penikata, Penichikata,</i>	Futures, <i>Nisa kukata,</i> <i>Nisa kukate.</i> <i>Nzakate.</i>
		Conditionals, <i>Ningakata,</i> <i>Ningakate.</i>
		IMPERATIVE. <i>Kata, katani.</i>
		SUBJUNCTIVE. <i>Nikate.</i>
		INFINITIVE. <i>Kukata.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD. TENSES.

The following tenses, and possibly others, are used in Senga:—

1. Present, in one indefinite and two definite forms.
2. Perfect, in four forms.
3. Past, in two forms; narrative in three.
4. Imperfect, in two forms.
5. Future, in three forms.
6. Conditional, in one form.

Of these, one present, one future, one perfect, and the two imperfects are formed, or combined, with auxiliaries. The auxiliaries used are *li* (am, be), *enzi* (was), *za* (come), *ti* (say), *ta* (finish). *Sila* (finish) may be called a semi-auxiliary.

Simple tense-forms consist of a verb-stem with one or more prefixes in the following order:—

- (1) A concord-prefix, indicating the subject of the verb and also the number, singular or plural, and the class. This is never absent.
- (2) A tense-sign, in all except the present indefinite.
- (3) A second concord-prefix, indicating the object of the verb, and always when present immediately preceding the verb itself. This is also the place of the reflexive prefix *li*.

In the negative conjugation the characteristic negative particle *te* is prefixed to the whole tense-form.

The concord-prefixes in verb-forms are commonly for convenience called person-prefixes, sometimes also subject-prefixes and object-prefixes.

The forms of person-prefix in all tense-forms are

Singular.	Subject.	Object.
First Person (I)	<i>mi-, u-</i>	<i>ni-, u-</i>
Second Person (you)	<i>u-, w-</i>	<i>ku-, kw-</i>
Third Person (he, she, it) for nouns of Class I	<i>(w)a, u</i>	<i>mu-, m-</i>

for all other nouns the concord-prefix for both subject and object, i.e. *u-, chi-, ka-, li-, lu-, i-, pa-, ma-, ku-*.

Plural.	Subject.	Object.
First Person (we)	<i>ti-</i>	<i>ti-</i>
Second Person (you)	<i>mu-, mw-</i>	<i>mu-, mw-</i> (with <i>-ni</i> often affixed to the verb)
Third Person (they) for nouns of Class I	<i>a-,</i>	<i>a-</i>

for all other nouns the concord-prefix for both subject and object, i.e. *a-, i-, vi-, tu-, zhi-, pa-, mu-, ku-*.

Person and concord prefixes form contractions and combinations with the vowel or syllable following, the general rule being that *a* forms *e* with *e* or *i*, and *o* with *o* or *u*, while *i* and *u* become *y* and *w*, or disappear, before a vowel.

### 1. Present Tenses.

The present tense has one indefinite and two definite forms.

(1) The present indefinite has no separate tense-sign. It is formed by placing the person-prefix before the infinitive form of the verb. The prefix always contracts with *ku-* of the infinitive into one syllable, except only in the case of monosyllabic verbs used without an object-prefix.

Uncontracted form—*nikuya*, I go.

Sing. 1. <i>ni-</i>	} <i>kuya</i> .
2. <i>u-</i>	
3. <i>a-</i>	
<i>u-, chi-, ka-, li-</i>	} <i>kuya</i> .
<i>lu-, i-, pa-, mu-</i>	
<i>ku-</i>	

Plur. 1. <i>ti-</i>	} <i>kuya</i> .
2. <i>mu-</i>	
3. <i>a-</i>	
<i>i-, vi-, tu-, zhi-</i>	} <i>kuya</i> .
<i>pa-, mu-, ku-</i>	

Common contracted form—*nulola*, I see.

Sing. 1. *nu-* (for *niku-*) }  
 2. *u-* (for *uku-*) } *lola*.  
 3. *o-* (for *aku-*) }

And so, *u-* (*u-ku*), *chu-* (*chi-ku*), *ko-* (*ka-ku*), *lu-* (*lu-ku*), *lyu-* (*li-ku*),  
*yu-* (*i-ku*), *po-* (*pa-ku*), *mu-* (*mu-ku*), *ku-* (*ku-ku*).

Plur. 1. *tu-* (for *tiku-*) }  
 2. *mu-* (for *muku-*) } *lola*.  
 3. *o-* (for *aku-*) }

And so, *yu-* (*i-ku*), *vu-* (*vi-ku*), *shu-* (*shi-ku*), *o-* (*a-ku*), *po-* (*pa-ku*),  
*mu-* (*mu-ku*), *ku-* (*ku-ku*).

(2) A present definite is formed by the auxiliary *li* with a person-prefix followed by the verb in the infinitive. The infinitive prefix *ku* is often dropped, except in monosyllabic verbs. Thus, *nili* (or *ndi*, for *nli*) *kupika*, I am cooking.

Sing. 1. *nili* (*ndi*) }  
 2. *uli* } *kupika*, (or) *pika*.  
 3. *ali* }  
 (and other concord-forms).

Plur. 1. *titi* }  
 2. *muli* } *kupika*, (or) *pika*.  
 3. *ali* }  
 (and other concord-forms).

(3) A second form of present definite, which seems to emphasize the person-prefix, is formed by using (*i*)*ti* for *li* throughout as above (2), i.e. *niti* (*nti*), *uti*, *eti*, *titi*, *mwiti*, *eti*, &c.

The negative present is formed by prefixing *te-* (before vowels often *t-*) to the above tense-forms throughout, and this is the method of forming the negative conjugation in general.

But it is important to notice that there are at least three other regular ways of expressing a negative in verbs, used with other tenses of the indicative mood beside the present, viz:—

(1) *-liye*, or *-kaliye*, with a person-prefix and followed by or contracted with a verb in the infinitive, used as a general negative for all tenses, e.g. *niliye kupangwa* or *niliopangwa*, I do not like, I refuse.

And a more polite, less abrupt negative is furnished by changing final *a* of the shorter form to *e*, i.e. *niliopangwe* (perhaps for *niliye nipangwe*, the subjunctive mood), I had rather not, I do not wish; *aliozumele*, he does not actually promise.

(2) *Osa-* followed by the verb-stem, or the infinitive if the verb is monosyllabic, for all tenses, numbers, persons, and classes of noun. Thus, *osapangwa*, I (you, he, she, it, we, you, they) do not like. If clear definition is wanted a personal pronoun or demonstrative is used.

(3) The affirmative tense-forms of the verb, or the infinitive mood, followed closely and abruptly by *iai*, no, not so, not at all. This often conveys a simple and forcible negative. Thus, *nupangwa iai*, I like it, not I; *neo kupangwa iai*, as to my liking it, not at all, far from it.

## 2. Perfect Tenses.

These include forms expressing a completed act, or a present state consequent on a past act, or simply an established settled condition.

There are four such tenses in Senga :—

(1) A near perfect with the tense-sign *a*, denoting an act or event completed recently, usually the same day, e.g. *afwa*, he has died to-day, he is just dead; *afwika*, he has just arrived, he has come to-day.

(2) A remote perfect with the tense-sign *cha* (i.e. a combination of *chi* and *a*), denoting an act or event completed at some time past, e.g. *achafwa*, he has been some time dead; *uchapita*, you have been gone for some time.

(3) A perfect indicating a state or condition arrived at and still continuing, in fact a verbal adjective. The tense-sign is *lu* with a change of the final *a* of the verb to *e*, or if monosyllabic, to *-ile*, e.g. *ulufwike*, you are at your destination; *alufwile*, he is dead (from *fwa*, die).

(4) A perfect emphasizing the completion of an act or event, or the establishment of a condition, is formed by using the verb *sila*, finish, or in some cases *ta*, finish, followed by or contracted with the infinitive form of the verb. It serves also as a pluperfect tense, e.g. *asila kuya*, he has (had) already gone; *tasilopika*, we have finished cooking; *akatumangiwa* (i.e. *akate ku-*), when he was (had been) tied up.

The above forms of the perfect often admit of being used in contrast with each other, e.g. *nakuta*, I have had enough, I am satisfied,

is a common equivalent of 'Thank you, I am much obliged,' in accepting a gift. But *nilukute*, my wants are satisfied, I am in a state of contentment, practically amounts to 'No more, thank you,' i.e. declines an offer.

The person-prefixes in perfect (1) are as follows :—

*Nalola*, I have seen.

Sing. 1. *na* }  
 2. *wa* } *lola*.  
 3. *a* }  
*wa, cha, ka, twa*  
*lya, ya, pa, mwa*  
*kwa.*

Plur. 1. *ta* }  
 2. *mwa* } *lola*.  
 3. *a* }  
*ya, vya, twa, zhya,*  
*a, pa, mwa, kwa.*

In the other forms they are as in the present.

Negative forms of the various perfects are made by prefixing *te-* throughout, or supplied in one of the ways mentioned already (see Present Tenses).

## 3. Past Tenses.

There are two forms, referring (it seems) to the near and the more remote past respectively, which may be compared with perfects (1) and (2). There are also three forms used constantly and indiscriminately in stories and reports of past events generally, which may be distinguished as narrative tenses.

(1) The tense-sign denoting the near past is *i*, e.g. *nilola* (i.e. *ni-i-lola*), I saw lately, or to-day.

Sing. 1. *ni (ni-i)* }  
 2. *wi (wi-i)* } *lola*.  
 3. *e (a-i)* }

Also, *wi-* (*wi-i*), *chi-* (*chi-i*), *ke-* (*ke-i*), *twi-* (*twi-i*), *lyi-* (*lyi-i*), *i-* (*i-i*), *pe-* (*pe-i*), *mwi-* (*mu-i*), *kwi-* (*ku-i*).

Plur. 1. *ti (ti-i)* }  
 2. *mwi (mu-i)* } *lola*.  
 3. *e (a-i)* }

Also *i-* (*i-i*), *vi-* (*vi-i*), *twi-* (*twi-i*), *zhi-* (*zhi-i*), *e-* (*e-i*), *pe-* (*pe-i*), *mwi-* (*mu-i*), *kwi-* (*ku-i*).

Monosyllabic verbs without an object-prefix are used after this tense-sign in the infinitive form, e.g. *nikuya (ni-i-kuya)*, I went.

(2) The tense-sign indicating (it seems) the more remote past is *ichi*, e.g. *nichilola (ni-ichi-lola)*, I once saw, I saw some time ago; *nichiya (ni-ichi-ya)*, I went.

The person-prefixes are the same as in past tense (1). *Ichi*

followed by object-prefix *a* becomes *icha*, e.g. *echafwanga* (*a-ichi-a-fwanga*), he found them.

The three forms of narrative past tense are as follows:—

(3) *Pe* (and often *nepe*) is prefixed to the ordinary past tense-forms, both (1) and (2), throughout, e.g. *penilola*, *penichilola*, I saw.

(4) *Ka* followed by the person-prefix and verb without any tense-sign, e.g. *kaunipa*, you gave me; *kalingula* (*ka-a-lingula*), they married.

(5) The infinitive form of the verb, but usually with an initial *n* sound, for all persons, numbers, and classes of nouns, e.g. *nkuya*, I (you, he, she, it, we, you, they) went; *nkuponela*, it happened, it befell.

The negative past is formed by prefixing *te-* to the forms of (1) and (2). For other modes of expressing negation see Present Tense (above).

#### 4. Imperfect Tenses.

Here also there are forms which may be called the near and the remote imperfect. Both are formed with the auxiliary *enzi*, but

(1) in the near imperfect *enzi* is followed by and (except in monosyllabic verbs) contracted with the infinitive mood.

e.g. *nenzi kulya*, I was eating.

Sing. 1. <i>nenzi</i>	} <i>kulya</i> .	Plur. 1. <i>tenzi</i>	} <i>kulya</i> .
2. <i>wenzi</i>		2. <i>mwenzi</i>	
3. <i>wenzi</i>		3. <i>enzi</i>	

The other concord-forms are *chenzi*, *kenzi*, *lwenzi*, *lyenzi*, *yenzi*, *penzi*, *mwenzi*, *kwenzi*, in the singular, and *yenzi*, *wyenzi*, *twenzi*, *zhenzi*, in the plural.

Similarly, *nenzopika* (*nenzi kupika* or *nenzi wa kupika*), I was cooking.

(2) In the remote imperfect, *enzi* is followed by the verb in the subjunctive mood, or (as it seems) contracted with it.

e.g. *nenzi nilye*, I was eating; *nenzo pike*, I was cooking. (If *nenzopite* represents *nenzi nipike*, the contraction is irregular.)

A further distinction of meaning may be traced in the two forms—the near imperfect, indicating at least in some verbs a special case or process, the remote, a general case or settled condition. Thus *enzolema* would mean, he was lately and for the time rich, enriched,



or getting rich,—and *enzoleme*, he was (at some past time) rich, a rich man, he had become rich.

The remote imperfect sometimes has the force of a pluperfect tense.

The negative imperfect is formed by prefixing *te-* to the forms given above.

### 5. Future Tenses.

The characteristic of the future tenses is the use of the auxiliary *za* in various combinations with distinct shades of meaning. There are also several other ways of expressing the force of a future.

(1) The most direct future, conveying a plain assertion, consists of *-za* with a person-prefix followed by or contracted with the infinitive form of a verb, e.g. *niza kuchita*, or *nizachita*, I will make (do). *Azonkala*, he will remain.

(2) A less direct, but the most common, future substitutes the subjunctive for the infinitive mood, i.e. *niza nichite*, or *nizachite*, I will make (do). *Uzolole*, you will see.

(3) By using *ze* (i.e. the subjunctive form), and sometimes *ngaze*, for *za* in the above, the assertion is conveyed in a still milder way.

The difference might be roughly expressed thus:—

*Niza kuchita*, I will certainly do it, it will be done.

*Niza nichite*, It is my intention to do it, it is likely to be done.

*Nize nichite*

*Nganze nichite* } I am thinking of doing it, it may be done.

The person-prefixes are in the regular forms, e.g. *niza*, *usa*, *aza*, *tiza*, *muza*, *aza*, and so on.

*Za* contracts regularly in future (1) with *ku*, becoming *zo*. In future (2) it contracts with a vowel-prefix following, e.g. *uzochite*, for *usa uchite*, *azaze* for *aza aze*. Sometimes contraction is carried farther, as in *soweleshye*, for *niza niku-weleshye*. *Kuza* is sometimes used for *za*, e.g. *akuzonkala* for *azonkala*, he will remain.

Various meanings of the future, as used in English, may be expressed as follows:—

(a) The future of practical certainty by the present indicative, e.g. *nikuya*, I go, I will go.

(b) The future of contingency by the subjunctive, of what is

possible, intended, contemplated, e. g. *ni wele*, I think I will go back, suppose I go back, I propose to return.

(c) The authoritative future, conveying a command, by the imperative, e. g. *usaya*, you will not go, you are forbidden to go, do not go.

As in other tenses, *te-* may be prefixed to the above forms to make a future negative. But the most emphatic form, amounting to an absolute refusal and even strong prohibition, combines *te* with the auxiliary *ti*. Thus *tenti (teniti) nichite*, I will not do it.

- Sing. 1. *Tenti nichite.*  
 2. *Teuti uchite.*  
     (*tuti*)  
 3. *Teati achite.*  
     (*teti*)

- Plur. 1. *Tetiti tichite.*  
     (*teti*)  
 2. *Temuti muchite.*  
     (*temti*)  
 3. *Teati achite.*  
     (*tati*)

#### 6. Conditional Tense.

The tense sign is *nga*, e. g. *ningakata*, I would (*ungakata*, you would) hold, &c. When stress is laid on the uncertainty, or the conditions implied, as in conditional sentences, the final vowel is *e* instead of *a*. Thus, *angapangwa*, he would certainly like, *angapangwe*, he might, would (probably, possibly, under certain conditions) like.

*Nga* is used in conditional and other kinds of dependent sentence, also with an adverbial, and (with person-prefixes appended) adjectival meaning, and to express moral obligation.

*Te* prefixed to the above forms makes the negative conditional, e. g. *teningakata*, I would not hold; *tangafwe*, he would not die.

#### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

The verb-stem without prefix supplies the imperative second person singular, and with *-ni* appended the second person plural, e. g. *pita*, *pitani*, go.

But monosyllabic verb-stems take the person-prefix or (in place of it) *i*, e. g. *ulya*, *ilya*, eat (sing.), *mulya*, *ilyani*, eat (plur.). The verb *sa*, come, beside *iza*, *izani*, has the special forms *soo*, *sooni*, and the verb *ya*, go, has the common forms *nkoya*, *nkoyani*, and *nkweyani*.

The forms of the subjunctive mood are however most commonly

used in all persons, as conveying a milder and more courteous order, request or demand. Thus, *tiye*, also *tiyeni*, let us go; *waleke*, let them leave off. When an object-prefix is present, the subject-prefix is sometimes omitted, e. g. *nipe*, give me, for *unipe*.

*Ka* is often prefixed to an imperative proper, as a sort of expletive, e. g. *kamtwani*, pound away! go and pound!

The negative imperative is formed by prefixing to the verb-stem *sa* with a person-prefix, e. g. *usapaya*, do not kill; *tisaya*, let us not go.

#### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

The subjunctive mood is formed by using the person-prefixes before the verb-stem, and *e* as its final vowel.

In general, this form is not only used in dependent sentences, (i. e. as strictly subjunctive), but in all other cases when the idea expressed by a verb is conceived otherwise than as a fact stated, i. e. conceived subjectively rather than objectively. This mode of conception, expressed by the change of the final vowel from *a* to *e*, seems to include and account for some of those tense forms ending in *-e*, commonly (as above) classed as indicative, though perhaps strictly belonging to the subjunctive, if recognized as the subjective mood. Otherwise there is no difference of tense in the subjunctive.

The subjunctive is used—

(1) In some dependent sentences (see chap. vii, Notes on Syntax).

(2) Independently, to express a thought, wish, purpose, probability, possibility, &c. Thus *niwele*, I am thinking of returning, may mean, I may (might, would, could, should, &c.) return.

(3) As a mild form of imperative (see above).

*Ka* is frequently inserted after the prefix in subjunctive forms, especially in dependent sentences.

The negative subjunctive is formed by inserting *sa* after the person-prefix, the final vowel being not *e*, but *a*; e. g. *etipengezhya tisaya*, he prevented us from going.

#### INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Ku* prefixed to the verb-stem forms (as in other Bantu dialects) the infinitive mood.

This form of the verb is largely used as:—

(1) A verbal noun (see Nouns, Class 10).

(2) A narrative tense form for any person or number, commonly with *n* prefixed (see Past Tenses, above).

(3) In dependent sentences to express a purpose (see Notes on Syntax, chap. vii).

The active form is often used when the passive would seem more suitable (see Derived Verb-stems, below), e. g. *chasila kulya*, it has been already eaten (it has finished as to eating).

A negative infinitive may be formed by prefixing *te*, or by using *iai* after the affirmative form in some cases.

#### PARTICIPLES.

The place of participles, as verbal adjectives, is supplied by any verb-form which can be used adjectivally, i. e. in Senga by any finite tense-form of the indicative mood, since these can be used like the relative forms or clauses of other languages.

E. g. *echafwanga nkupanama*, he found them standing (or, as) they stood—the infinitive here being as a narrative tense). *Nuwalola*, or *nolola, olala*, I see them lying down. *Emula (a-i-mu-ula) alufwile*, he lifted him up dead.

A form consisting of a verb-root with *-ile*, or *-ilile* affixed, seems used as a verbal adverb, e. g. *luitile*, while running; *tatikile*, while getting to, until getting (see Notes on Syntax, chap. vii).

#### DERIVED VERB-STEMS.

Every simple verb-stem has or may have a group more or less complete of verb-stems containing the same root with different endings, expressing modifications of the root-meaning. And each stem has, if the root-meaning allows it, a passive and neuter as well as an active form. These forms are commonly called voices, and the verb-stems derived, i. e. as distinguished from the simple root-stem. They are classed together for convenience here, all being characterized by changes at the end of the word, i. e. suffixes following the root itself.

(1) *Passive Voice*. The ending is *-wa*, *-iwa*, or *-ewa*, after any verb-stem, simple or derived.

Passive forms are seldom used, and sentences are habitually cast in a way to avoid them, e. g. *echimnyata*, they beat him, for *enyatiwa*, he was beaten.

(2) *Neuter Voice*. The ending is *-ka, -ika, -eka*. In many verbs however it has a causal meaning, e.g. *panamika*, cause to stop. The neuter is used for the passive, when no direct suggestion of the agent is required, e.g. *nzizi zatintika*, the ropes are drawn tight.

The following are derived verb-stems:—

(3) *Applied*. The ending is *-la, -ila, -ela* (also *-ilila, -elela*, with perhaps a continuative force). This form is often translatable by a preposition in English following the verb, but it is also often used for the simple verb-stem, when the idea conveyed is limited or directed to an object, whether mentioned or not. E.g. *lambila*, urge a petition, beseech, and *lambilila*, press a request (on).

(4) *Causal*. The ending is *-ya*, or more commonly a syllable variously heard as *sha* or *zha, isha, izha* or *izhya, esha, ezha* or *ezhya*. The latter is more commonly used as intensive than as causal, and constantly supplies the place of an emphasizing adverb. E.g. *pengezhya*, stop abruptly; *katizhya*, hold tight; *fwambizhya*, walk energetically.

Some verbs have both forms, *-ya* being causal only.

(5) *Reciprocal*. The ending is *-ana*, e.g. *nyatana*, beat each other, fight; *uzhyana*, agree together; *lingana*, be like, like each other.

(6) *Reversive*. The ending is *-ula, -ulula*, and perhaps *-ola*. In some verbs the *u* sound seems to affect a preceding syllable even when part of the verb-stem, e.g. *vunikila*, cover; *vunukula*, uncover; *manga*, bind; *mangulula*, unbind.

(7) *Stative*. Some verbs ending in *-ama* seem to denote a fixed or relatively lasting state, e.g. *panama*, stand still (upright); *fisama*, be in hiding.

To these may be added for completeness:—

(8) The reflexive form of verbs, made by prefixing *li* to the root for any person or number (see also chap. iv).

(9) Reduplicated stems, in which continuance or intensity is expressed by repeating the stem twice, e.g. *yenda yenda*, go on and on; *saka saka*, hunt diligently.

#### *To be.*

Equivalents of various parts of the verb 'to be' in its various uses are furnished by parts of the verbs *kuwa*, to be (exist), *kunkala*, to be (in a state or condition), and by *ni, li, and ti*.

*Kuwa* also means 'to fall,' and this fact may have a tendency to limit the common use of it in the meaning 'to be.'

In the present tense indicative, I am (not) tall, may be represented in at least six ways:

*Neo (te) mtali.*  
*Neo (te) ni mtali.*  
*Neo (te) nili mtali (uli, ali, tili, muli, ali).*  
*Neo (te) niti (or nti) mtali (witi, eti, titi, muti, eti).*  
*Neo (te) nunkala mtali.*

A concord-prefix may also be used as a copula, e.g. *vivintu vi vinyinjī*, the things are numerous.

The negative may also be expressed by *niyile mtali*, or *mtali iai*.

The imperfect tense is as follows:—

Sing. 1. <i>Nenzi.</i>	Plur. 1. <i>Tenzi.</i>
„ 2. <i>Wenzi.</i>	„ 2. <i>Mwenzi.</i>
„ 3. <i>Wenzi.</i>	„ 3. <i>Wenzi, enzi.</i>

And so on with the concord-prefixes.

The negative imperfect is in the anomalous form *nenzeve*, *wenzeve*, &c.

The other tense and mood forms are supplied regularly by the verbs *-wa*, and (*n*)*kala*, as (for example):—

<i>Ninawe</i> , I shall be.	<i>Ningawa</i> , I should be.
<i>Tenti ninawe</i> , I shall not be.	<i>Iwa, iwani</i> , be (imperative).
<i>Nawa</i> , I have become, I am.	<i>Usawa</i> , do not be.
<i>Niwa, nichywa</i> , } I was.	<i>Niwe</i> (that) I may be (subjunctive).
<i>Nkuwa, kaniwa</i> , }	<i>Kuwa</i> , to be (infinitive).
<i>Niluwile</i> , I am.	<i>Wilile, nkalilile</i> , there being, during.

#### To have (possess).

In general the verb 'to have' is expressed by using the same forms as for the verb 'to be,' followed by or combined with the preposition *na*, with.

Thus in the present tense, *nina*, I have.

Sing. 1. <i>Nina.</i>	Plur. 1. <i>Tina.</i>
„ 2. <i>Wina.</i>	„ 2. <i>Nwina.</i>
„ 3. <i>Ena.</i>	„ 3. <i>Ena.</i>

(The *n* of *na* is here treated as *in*.)

The third person concord-forms of this tense are constantly used as equivalent to an adjective, 'having, possessing,' i.e. *una, chinu*,

*kena, lwina, zhina*, &c. Of persons the usual form is *mwine wa*, possessor (owner) of, i.e. having, possessing.

In the negative conjugation it should be noted that *niliye, nenzeve*, &c., do not require to be followed by *na*, but express both I am not, and, I have not; I was not, and, I had not.

#### LIST OF VERBS.

(Ap. = applied; Cs. = causal; Nt. = neuter; Ps. = passive; Rp. = reciprocal; Rv. = Reversive.)

<i>Alika</i> , attend as doctor, treat as patient.	<i>Fiali</i> , borrow. Cs. <i>fialishya</i> , lend.
<i>Ambika</i> , fix, make stick.	<i>Fina</i> , pinch, squeeze.
<i>Ambukila</i> , infect, be contagious.	<i>Finsimpa</i> , be short.
<i>Bila</i> , dive, sink, be drowned. Cs. [i.e. Causal] <i>bizhya</i> .	<i>Fipa</i> , be dark, be gloomy.
<i>Booka</i> , collapse, be broken down. Cs. <i>boosha</i> .	<i>Fisa</i> , hide, conceal. <i>Fisama</i> , be in hiding. <i>Fisamila</i> , lie in wait for.
<i>Chama</i> , be in line, stand in a row. Cs. <i>chamishya</i> .	<i>Fotokoza</i> , explain.
<i>Chefya</i> , see <i>Chepa</i> .	<i>Fukama</i> , kneel.
<i>Chela</i> , gather (fruit, &c.).	<i>Fula</i> , work in metals, forge.
<i>Chelela</i> , get up early.	<i>Fuma</i> , go out. Cs. <i>fumya, fumishya</i> , put out, discharge, send off.
<i>Chenchenea</i> , outwit, cheat.	<i>Funala</i> , be blunt, have no edge.
<i>Cheneka</i> , do wrong unintentionally, make a mistake, be in error.	<i>Funda</i> , carry a child on the back, strip bark.
<i>Chenjela</i> , be cunning, be worldly wise.	<i>Fundukuta</i> , writhe, wriggle. Also <i>vundukula</i> .
<i>Chenjeleka</i> , entice, persuade, tempt.	<i>Fundula</i> , flay.
<i>Chenjelezhya</i> , be delighted, be in raptures.	<i>Funfunishya</i> , make short. Cf. <i>finimpa</i> .
<i>Chepa</i> , be lacking, be deficient, fail, run short, get less. Cs. <i>chefya</i> .	<i>Funka</i> , slacken, loosen. Nt. <i>funkika</i> .
<i>Cheuzhya</i> , make a sigh, gesticulate.	<i>Futa</i> , drizzle.
<i>Chila</i> , live upon. Cs. <i>chishya</i> , maintain, support life, give food to.	<i>Fwa</i> , die. Ap. <i>fwila</i> . Cs. <i>fwisha</i> .
<i>Chililika</i> , prop up, support.	<i>Fwamba</i> , walk fast.
<i>Chilupa</i> , leap, spring, hop, bound.	<i>Fwanga</i> , come upon, find, meet.
<i>Chinda</i> , commit adultery, ravish.	<i>Fwaya</i> , break. Nt. <i>fwaika</i> .
<i>Chinjilishya</i> , ward off, keep off.	<i>Fwemba</i> , take snuff.
<i>Chita</i> , do, make, be engaged in, exhibit in an active form, express, feel, show, hurt, cause pain to. Cs. <i>chitishya, chizhya</i> . Ap. <i>chitila</i> .	<i>Fwika</i> , arrive, reach.
<i>Dalila</i> , spring upon (as on prey).	<i>Fwitwa</i> , be bereaved (see <i>Fwa</i> ).
<i>Elama</i> (and <i>welama</i> ), bow, (bend) down (neut.).	<i>Fwisha</i> , kill (see <i>Fwa</i> ).
<i>Endamila</i> , overhear, listen secretly to.	<i>Fwura</i> , breathe, rest. Ap. <i>Fwurila</i> , blow into.
	<i>Fyokola</i> , pluck maize.
	<i>Fyokolela</i> , scold, nag at.
	<i>Ifya</i> , spoil, damage, destroy, hurt.
	<i>Ika</i> , place, set.
	<i>Ima</i> , stand up, make a start, set off, go. Cs. <i>imya, imishya</i> , set up, erect.

*Imba*, sing.  
*Ina*, be sleek (plump, fat).  
*Ipila*, hate. Cs. *ipilishya*, detest, abhor.  
*Ita*, call, summon.  
*Itawa*, answer a call.  
*Jengoola*, peck at.  
*Kaika*, be puzzled, perplexed, be in doubt.  
*Kala* (commonly *Nkala*), dwell, remain, sit, be.  
*Kalala*, be angry. Cs. *kululusha*, make angry.  
*Kalipa*, be angry, be excited, be painful. Cs. *kalipishya*, be furious, exasperate, provoke.  
*Kalishya*, sit on the haunches, sit on the ground (see *Kala*).  
*Kama*, squeeze, wring, milk a cow. Rv. *kamula*, wring out, squeeze.  
*Kana*, contradict, deny, refute, say 'no.' Cs. *kanishya*.  
*Kanda*, trample, stamp on.  
*Kanga*, (1) give a blow with a hoe, dig; (2) baffle, thwart, give a shock to, cause to fail; also (3) fail, be unable to, give up. Ps. *kangiwa*, be baffled, be beaten. Cs. *kangisha*, *kanganishya*, *kanganya*, surprise, astound, bewilder, confound. Ps. *kanganishwa*, be surprised, admire greatly, be shocked, &c.  
*Kangamila*, stick to, be sticky.  
*Kangaza*, gnaw.  
*Kanka*, push. Cs. *kankishya*, push violently.  
*Kanzinga*, fry.  
*Kapishya*, sprinkle.  
*Koloweka*, hang (neut.). Cs. *kolowekehya*, hang up.  
*Kolwa*, have a feast, get drunk.  
*Komana*, meet with, be together, consist of, form one with.  
*Komola*, plant seeds, sow (in trenches, holes, &c.).  
*Konka*, follow.  
*Konkovele*, hammer (at, on).  
*Konsha*, ask, inquire, question.  
*Kopela*, wink.  
*Kosa*, be strong, be well.  
*Kosomola*, cough.

*Kota*, be old, be aged, be worn out.  
*Kozhya*, make up (a fire).  
*Kukula*, make smooth (plaster on a wall).  
*Kula*, (1) drag, draw, (2) grow, increase.  
*Kululuka*, be destitute.  
*Kulumishya*, *kulumuka*, cause to do (or be done) quickly, hasten on, keep at work.  
*Kumatila*, *kumbatila*, embrace, clasp, stick to.  
*Kumba*, dig a hole, make a pit.  
*Kumburwa*, kick, strike with foot, trip over.  
*Kumbwa*, covet, desire. Ap. *kumbwila*.  
*Kunda*, commit adultery.  
*Kunkaluka*, roll along.  
*Kunkumula*, wipe dust off.  
*Kupwilila*, wag (tail).  
*Kuta*, be satisfied, have enough, be content. Cs. *kusha*, satisfy, content, be enough; also *kutishya*, *kushya*, stuff, cram, gorge.  
*Kwatika*, snap, break (as a rope, &c.).  
*Kwe'a*, go up, mount, ascend, climb, get upon.  
*Kwinyinyika*, be grieved, be sorrowful, be sad.  
*Laila*, say farewell, take leave. Rp. *lailana*.  
*Lala*, lie, lie down.  
*Lalika*, call, summon.  
*Lamba*, clap (the hands).  
*Lambila*, *Lambilila*, implore, beseech, pray.  
*Lambula*, pay (wages).  
*Lapa*, (1) swear, (2) regret, miss, be sorry for, repent.  
*Lasa*, wound, hit, damage, hurt.  
*Lawila*, speak, say, address.  
*Leka*, let go, leave, abandon, give leave to, pardon. Ap. *lekela*, pardon, let off. Cs. *lekeshya*, *leshya*, make leave off, stop, hinder, bring to an end.  
*Lela*, rear, bring up, educate.  
*Lema*, (1) be weary, weigh upon, oppress, (2) be rich.

*Leмба*, make marks, carve, tattoo, write.  
*Leneka*, honour, show respect to. Cs. *lemekehya*.  
*Leta*, bring. Ap. *letela*.  
*Lila*, utter a sound, cry, mourn.  
*Lima*, use a hoe, cultivate, dig ground.  
*Linda*, wait, keep station. Ap. *lindila*, *lindilila*, wait on (for, &c.), keep watch over, guard.  
*Linga*, measure, copy, weigh. Ap. *lingana*, be matched, equal, similar, fair, just. Cs. *linganya*, *linganisha*.  
*Lingula*, marry. Rp. *lingulana*.  
*Loa*, *lowa*, (1) go in, enter, penetrate, (2) bewitch. Cs. *lowesha*, admit.  
*Loka*, *lokwa*, rain.  
*Lola*, see, observe. Cs. *loleshya*, gaze at, examine, inspect.  
*Lomba*, beg, make request to, ask for.  
*Longa*, arrange, set in order, store away.  
*Loola*, angle, fish with hook.  
*Lota*, dream.  
*Lowa*, see *Loa*.  
*Luka*, vomit. Cs. *lusya*.  
*Lukana*, think, reflect, remember.  
*Luma*, bite, sting.  
*Lumata*, be sharp-edged, be sharp.  
*Lumba*, praise.  
*Luwika*, cup, draw blood.  
*Lungama*, be smooth, even, level.  
*Lungamika*, make smooth, &c.  
*Lunguzhya*, boil (act.).  
*Lusa*, be dangerous.  
*Luta*, go, set off, start (a short distance).  
*Luwa*, forget.  
*Lwa*, struggle, wrestle, grapple with.  
*Lwala*, become ill.  
*Lya*, eat. Ap. *lyela*. Nt. *lyeka*, be eaten, be eatable. Cs. *lyesha*, feed.  
*Manga*, tie, fasten, bind, build (a hut). Rv. *mangulula*, untie.  
*Manuhula*, draw apart, open.  
*Mala*, daub (mud on native hut walls).  
*Meka*, be proud, show off, boast.  
*Mela*, (1) grow (as plant), (2) swallow.  
*Meta*, shave.  
*Mina*, blow the nose.  
*Muka*, loiter, be late.  
*Mwawa*, hear, attend, obey. Ap. *mwawila*, listen to. Nt. *mwawika*, be audible. Rp. *mwawana*, be sympathetic, have pity.  
*Mwa*, drink. Ap. *mwela*. Ps. *mwewa*. Nt. *mweska*. Cs. *mwesha*.  
*Mwazhya*, scatter, waste.  
*Ndalala*, fly (as bird).  
*Nena*, say, speak, address. Ap. *nenela*.  
*Nesa*, puzzle, baffle, be difficult to.  
*Ng'anula*, tear up, cut pieces off.  
*Ng'amwawila*, nod.  
*Noka*, be convex.  
*Nola*, sharpen, give an edge to.  
*Nona*, get fat.  
*Nunka*, smell (neut.), have a smell. Cs. *nunsha*, smell (act.).  
*Nunula*, redeem, pay to get back.  
*Nya*, emit, discharge (esp. of excreta).  
*Nyala*, be emaciated, be thin.  
*Nyangula*, lick, lap.  
*Nyata*, strike, knock, beat.  
*Nyaya*, float, swim.  
*Nyeka*, be hot.  
*Nyela*, migrate, move house. Cs. *nyelesha*.  
*Nyenga*, cheat, outwit.  
*Nyokola*, touch, handle.  
*Nyonka*, suck (as child).  
*Nyula*, root up.  
*Nyuntika*, be elastic. *Nyuntila*, draw out (as elastic).  
*Nyunya mala*, sit on heels (not on ground).  
*Ola*, go bad, putrefy, get rotten.  
*Ombola*, ransom, buy back.  
*Ona*, see, observe. Nt. *oneka*, be visible. Cs. *onsha*, show.  
*Pa*, give, offer. Cs. *peshya*. Ps. *pewa*. Ap. *pela*.  
*Pachika*, hang against wall (act.).  
*Paka* (1) be abundant, (2) adjoin.  
*Pakila*, go on board (a canoe). Cs. *pakishya*, put on board.  
*Palapala*, be restless, fidgety.

- Pambula*, decide (a case), settle (a dispute), give judgement.  
*Panama*, stand up, be erect, stop, stand still. *Panamika*, cause to stop, set upright.  
*Pandula*, split.  
*Pangwa*, like, want, be fond of, incline to, suit.  
*Panika*, fix, make fast. Cs. *panikishya*.  
*Pata*, stick in the throat.  
*Paya*, kill.  
*Papata*, grumble. Ap. *papatila*.  
*Pela*, (1) grind (as grain), (2) let down (bucket in well), (3) (Ap. of *Pa*), give to.  
*Pelekeshya*, send, convey.  
*Pelula*, treat disrespectfully, insult, ridicule.  
*Penda*, count, calculate.  
*Penga*, stop, hinder, welcome as guest. Cs. *pengezhya*.  
*Pepa*, smoke (tobacco).  
*Pepeta*, sift, winnow.  
*Pepula*, ridicule, mock at.  
*Peta*, bend round, make a ring (or hoop) of.  
*Pika*, cook.  
*Pikula*, plait.  
*Pila*, endure, bear.  
*Pima*, (act.) collect, gather together.  
*Pinya*, be a cripple, be lame.  
*Pita*, pass, go away.  
*Poka*, take, receive, take away, rob, plunder.  
*Pola*, get well (from sickness). Cs. *pozhya*, cure.  
*Ponda*, crush, pound.  
*Pukuta*, wipe dry.  
*Pukwa*, be homesick.  
*Pula*, (1) excel, surpass, (2) give maintenance to, keep.  
*Pulula*, gather (rice).  
*Pumula*, rest, make a halt.  
*Pumsha*, steal.  
*Pupula*, flap.  
*Pusa*, be silly, be naughty.  
*Pusula*, pluck (a fowl).  
*Puwya*, hasten (act.), hurry, be quick. Cs. *puwisha*.  
*Puzumuka*, escape, be saved.
- Pwezula*, tear in pieces.  
*Pwilila*, dry up.  
*Pya*, get hot, burn, get ripe, be cooked.  
*Pyela*, sweep.  
*Saka*, look for, search for, hunt, want. Ap. *sakila*.  
*Sakula*, comb.  
*Sala*, be left, remain Cs. *salishya*.  
*Salula*, choose, select.  
*Sama*, dress up, be fitted up, be decorated. Act. *samika*.  
*Sambila*, learn. Cs. *sambishya*, teach.  
*Sambuluka*, get soft, be melted.  
*Sangala*, *sangalala*, be glad, rejoice.  
*Sanza*, pluck millet, gather in harvest.  
*Sauka*, spring (of water, source of river).  
*Seka*, smile, laugh, ridicule.  
*Seluka*, go down, descend.  
*Sendama*, slant, be slanting.  
*Senga*, beg, be a beggar.  
*Sesa*, cut (hair).  
*Sewa*, cut (grass).  
*Sewela*, play.  
*Seuka*, overflow, be in flood.  
*Shama*, fail, incur loss (damage, disappointment). Cs. *shamishya*.  
*Shoka*, set fire to, burn up.  
*Shuka*, succeed, gain, receive favour (benefit, blessing). Cs. *shukishya*.  
*Sia*, leave, abandon, let alone.  
*Sila*, finish (act. and neut.), come to an end, complete. Nt. *sililika*, be finished off, completed. Cs. *sililishya*, finish, complete.  
*Sililika*, be sorrowful, grieve.  
*Simikishya*, tell stories about, slander, make a claim to.  
*Sinka*, stop a hole, cork, stop up.  
*Sintushyana*, exchange.  
*Sinzinila*, dose, be drowsy.  
*Sita*, barter, buy, sell, trade. Ap. *sitila*. Cs. *sitishya*. Rp. *sitana*.  
*Sitika*, get out of the way of, take shelter from. Cs. *sitikishya*, put away safely, put in store (under cover).  
*Sokola*, clean (grain).  
*Solola*, punt a canoe with a pole.

- Sololoka*, stick out, project.  
*Sonda*, taste.  
*Songa*, press on, apply forcibly.  
*Songola*, make pointed.  
*Sonka*, collect contributions (taxes, food, &c.). Cs. *sonkeshya*.  
*Sowa*, lack, be without, have none of.  
*Suka*, clean, make clean, wash.  
*Sulula*, act as guide, show the way.  
*Sunga*, attend to, take care of, keep safely.  
*Swa*, remain for a time, stop.  
*Ta*, finish (neut.), end.  
*Taila*, put (a canoe) across (a river).  
*Takataka*, be restless, tiresome.  
*Talifya*, make tall (long, high).  
*Talimpa*, be tall (long, high).  
*Tambalala*, crawl, creep.  
*Tambuluka*, be straightened out, be drawn out.  
*Tambulula*, draw out, straighten.  
*Tana*, keep selfishly, be selfish (niggardly, miserly).  
*Tandala*, idle about, amuse oneself.  
*Tandila*, watch for, keep off (birds, &c.).  
*Tanga*, be in front, go forward. Ap. *tangila*. Rv. *tangula*, send in front, send before, be (go) in front, begin, be foremost. Cs. *tangishya*, send in front, put first.  
*Tapa*, draw water.  
*Tapata*, boil (neut.). Cs. *tapatisha*.  
*Tatika*, (1) get, gain, (2) begin, make a start, (3) vex, tease, annoy.  
*Tauka*, cross, go across.  
*Taya*, throw away, lose.  
*Tea*, set a trap, snare.  
*Teka*, tame, domesticate.  
*Telela*, slip, slide.  
*Tema*, cut (in lengths).  
*Temwa*, love, be fond of, like.  
*Tenda*, cut, cut across, cut off.  
*Tenena*, fall (of water, cascade).  
*Tepuka*, be flexible, bend.  
*Teta*, urge a plea, argue, ask mercy. Cs. *tezhya*, defeat. Rp. *tetana*.  
*Tetelela*, appeal to, supplicate.  
*Telema*, tremble, quiver, shake.  
*Teula*, clear ground (for plantation).  
*Ti*, say.
- Tila*, pour.  
*Tima*, extinguish.  
*Tinta*, stretch, draw tight. Nt. *tintika*.  
*Tola*, claw, scratch, pick up with fingers.  
*Tondwa*, bungle, do work badly.  
*Tonfyra*, feel, finger.  
*Tontola*, be weak (enfeebled, exhausted).  
*Tua*, be white (bright, pure). Cs. *tusha*. Nt. *tunka*.  
*Tukuta*, sweat.  
*Tukana*, abuse (with words), use bad language.  
*Tula*, (1) name, call (mention) by name, (2) put down load.  
*Tulika*, make a hole, bore through, pass through a hole. Cs. *tulukishya*.  
*Tulula*, have a hole (opening) in.  
*Tuma*, employ, send. Cs. *tumishya*. Nt. *tumika*. Ps. *tumwa*.  
*Tumba*, bloom, blossom.  
*Tumbana*, be concave.  
*Tumbulula*, extricate oneself, get out, get away.  
*Tunga*, string together, put on thread, thread.  
*Tutuma*, *Tutumila*, palpitate, vibrate, quiver, beat.  
*Tuula*, rub hard, grate, file.  
*Tuzula*, reproach, scold.  
*Twa*, pound (with pestle and mortar).  
*Twala*, take up, lift, carry.  
*Twika*, put on the head (a load).  
*Tyola*, break, snap off (act.). Nt. *tyoka*.  
*Uka*, wake, be roused, be cheered. Cs. *usha*.  
*Ula*, take, fetch, bring.  
*Uluwa*, roar.  
*Umba*, make of earth, do potter's work.  
*Unga*, collect (act.). assemble, call together. Rp. *ungana*. Cs. *unganishya*.  
*Utuka*, run, run away, escape. Cs. *utusha*, save, put to flight. Ap. *utukila*.  
*Uula*, groan.



- Uzhya*, tell, inform, direct, order, instruct, warn.  
*Vimba*, (1) thatch, (2) swell.  
*Vina*, dance.  
*Vuka*, put in water, launch.  
*Vukuta*, blow bellows.  
*Vulumula*, put away, move aside.  
*Vundula*, stir (food, &c.).  
*Vunga*, fold, roll, wrap up. Rv.  
*vunguhula*, unfold, unwrap, &c.  
*Vunika*, give light to, light up.  
*Vunikila*, cover over, put cover on, turn over (as cover).  
*Vunukila*, turn over, turn upside down. Nt. *vunukika*, capsize.  
*Vunukula*, uncover.  
*Vwa*, filter through, exude, ooze out, leak out. Cs. *vwizha*, filter, leak.  
*Vwala*, put on (dress), wear. Ap. *vwalika*, wear fine dress, dress up.  
*Vwalika*, cause to dress, dress (act.).  
*Vwazika*, cause to wear, dress.  
*Vwenjelela*, move to another place, remove, put aside. Nt. *vwenjeleka*.  
*Vwula*, take off (dress), undress (neut. and act.), become naked.  
*Vyala*, produce offspring, bear. Ps. *vyalwa*, *vyaliwa*. Cs. *vyalisha*. Nt. *vyalika*.  
*Vyongo/oka*, be circuitous, zigzag, crooked.  
*Vyunga*, wriggle, writhe, waggle.  
*Wa*, (1) exist, be, (2) fall. Cs. *wizhya*. Ap. *wila*.  
*Wala*, shine (as sun). Cs. *walishya*.  
*Wama*, be good (suitable), nice, pleasing, &c.). Ap. *wamila*. Ps. *wamilwa*. Cs. *wamya*, *wamizhya*, repair, adjust, improve, administer, arrange, &c.  
*Wanda*, step on, tread on.  
*Wandula*, look about, be prying, be inquisitive.  
*Wawa*, cause itching. Ps. *wawilwa*.  
*Wela*, return. Ap. *welela*. Cs. *welashya*, *weshya*, make a return, repay, take vengeance, send back, repeat, do again.  
*Welama*, bend (oneself) down, bow down.  
*Welenga*, count, calculate.  
*Weleweta*, chatter, talk loudly.  
*Welwezha*, whisper.  
*Wepeshya*, (1) slander, calumniate. (2) pretend.  
*Wezya*, be too much for, overcome, exhaust.  
*Wewa*, be exhausted (overcome, worn out), give in.  
*Weya*, shave the head bare.  
*Wila*, (1) sew, (2) ferment. Cs. *wilizhya*.  
*Ya*, go. Ap. *yila*. Cs. *yizhya*.  
*Yaka*, burn (neut.). Cs. *yasha*, burn, chafe, inflame.  
*Yaluka*, change (neut.), alter. Cs. *yalushya*.  
*Yamika*, be grateful, thank. Ap. *yamikila*.  
*Yanga/a*, be glad (happy), rejoice.  
*Yangila*, load (a gun).  
*Yangizhya*, enlarge, add to, increase.  
*Yanika*, spread in the sun, dry, air.  
*Yanzhya*, spread out (a mat, &c.).  
*Yanzika*, spread (neut.), extend.  
*Yasuka*, answer, reply.  
*Yawa*, divide in portions. Ap. *yawila*. Cs. *yawanya*.  
*Yenda*, go, proceed. Cs. *yendeshya*, (1) send, cause to go, (2) publish abroad, explain, teach.  
*Yenga*, brew (beer).  
*Yeshya*, try, exert oneself, make trial of, test. Ap. *yezhyana*, compete, be rivals.  
*Yezima*, shine, be bright, glitter.  
*Yocha*, cook, bake, roast.  
*Yoelela*, be accustomed to, be used to.  
*Yofya*, frighten, intimidate. See *yopa*.  
*Yonda*, yearn, long for, desire.  
*Yopa*, fear. Cs. *yofya*, *yofwizha*.  
*Yota*, bask by (fire), sit in (sun).  
*Yovika*, be mixed. Cs. *yovishya*, mix.  
*Yuma*, become dry, harden, wither.  
*Yunga*, go a walk, ramble about. Ap. *yungila*, visit.  
*Za*, come. Ap. *zila*.  
*Zengulila*, *zenguluka*, go round, go about.  
*Zhamika*, borrow, lend.  
*Zhyeta*, crush with teeth, chew.

*Zika*, sow (seed), plant.  
*Zingwa*, be in trouble, grieve.  
*Zimya*, extinguish.  
*Ziwa*, know, know how to, be able (fit, competent).  
*Zizimuka*, be startled (frightened, surprised). Cs. *zizimusha*.  
*Zola*, *Zoleka*, anoint oneself, apply oil (ointment, paint, &c.).

*Zula*, fill, close up. Cs. *uzhya*, make full.  
*Zumela*, consent, assent to, acknowledge, confess, promise, allow, undertake. Cs. *zumelshya*.  
*Zunguluka*, go round, turn round. Cs. *zunguluzhya*.  
*Zwerwela*, swing, sway, rock.

## CHAPTER VI

## ADVERBS, PREPOSITIONS, ETC.

ADVERBS of manner, kind, and degree, are freely formed from adjectival roots by prefixing *pa-*. *Vi-* is also used.

*Pa-* prefixed to and contracting with the infinitive form of verbs also supplies adverbial expressions, such as *potatika*, in the first place, firstly, *posila*, at last, finally—for *pa-kutatika*, *pa-kusila*.

Adverbs of place and time are formed with the prefixes *pa-*, *mu-*, *ku-*. The use of such adverbs is often superseded or emphasized by affixing *-ko*, *-mo*, *-po*, to verb-forms, e.g. *aliko*, he is there; *nipiteko?* may I pass there?

Adverbs denoting intensity or emphasis are largely represented by the causal verb-stem, denoting intensity (see chap. v, Derived Verb-stems).

Numeral adverbs take the prefix *ka-*, e.g. *kawo*, once, *kawili*, twice, and so on.

## LIST OF ADVERBS.

*Apa*, *Apo*, here, now; there, then.  
*Chakana chaka*, often, time upon time.  
*Chele*, quietly, without noise, in silence.  
*Chendi*, really, truly, very. *Chendi chendi*, exceedingly, very much, thoroughly, &c.  
*Chivi*, *chichiwi*, badly, wrongly.  
*Iai*, no, not so, by no means.  
*Kale*, long ago, in the past, formerly.  
*Kamo*, once; *kawili*, twice; *kawili kawili*, often, repeatedly.  
*Kumendo*, on foot.  
*Kumenso*, in front, openly.  
*Kunja*, *kansi*, *kaya*, possibly, probably, perhaps, I do not know, I daresay.  
*Kumulu*, above, up, on the top.  
*Kunja*, outside, out of doors.  
*Kuno*, here, there.  
*Kunyansi*, below, down, at the bottom.  
*Kutali*, far, at a distance.  
*Lelo*, to-day.  
*Lomba*, *lomba pano*, now, soon, presently, immediately, at once.

*Lwilo*, at a run, quickly.  
*Mana mpepo*, very early.  
*Mbali zhyonse*, on all sides, around.  
*Mkati*, inside, within, in the middle.  
*Mwawa*, in the morning, early.  
*Nde, inde*, yes.  
*Ndov*, face downwards, on the face.  
*Nga* (in refusals, e.g.), *nga neo*, not I (literally perhaps, should I? do you think I would?).  
*Ngako*, in fact, really, indeed.  
*Nipo*, and then, thereupon.  
*Pofupi*, close by, nearly, soon, lately.  
*Pakati*, see *Mkati*.  
*Pambali*, aside, on one side, at the side.  
*Pambi*, otherwise, elsewhere, at another time.  
*Pambine*, otherwise, or, or perhaps.  
*Pameneapo*, just there, just then, on the spot.  
*Pamo*, together, in a lump.  
*Pamulu*, see *Kumulu*.  
*Pano*, here, now, presently, near.

*Panja*, see *Kunja*.  
*Panseli*, behind, secretly, out of view.  
*Pansi*, down, below, at the bottom.  
*Pantansi*, before, in front.  
*Patonto*, a little, within a little, almost, soon, nearly; *Patonto patonto*, little by little, by degrees, slowly.  
*Pavuli*, behind, in the rear, backwards, in the past.  
*Payakwe*, elsewhere, in another place.  
*Paweme*, well, properly, in comfort (health, peace, &c.).  
*Posila*, at last, finally.  
*Potatika*, at first, firstly.  
*Soti*, again, still, more.  
*Teti*, thus.  
*Tiala*, for nothing, idly, foolishly.  
*Uku, uko*, here, there.  
*Viweme*, well, rightly, fairly. Cf. *Paweme*.  
*Vivi*, badly, much, too much.  
*Wanzi*, for nothing, gratis, as a present.

#### PREPOSITIONS.

The wide range of relations covered by the use of the applied form of verb-stems enables prepositions to be largely dispensed with. The few in common use are:—

-a, 'of' (made of, belonging to, possessing, from, &c.), always with a concord-prefix connecting it with a noun which it connects with another noun. It is largely used with a noun or adverb preceding to form compound prepositions, e.g. *pamulu pa*, on the top of; *mlandu wa*, because of.

*Na*, 'with, by, at, to,' is used of agent and instrument, and also more widely of local or other connexion, accompaniment, proximity, &c. E.g. *nyata na nkole*, strike with a club; *nyatiwa na muntu*, be struck by a man; *pita na njila*, pass along a road; *(ku)lya na chiuza*, eat with a friend; *(ku)ya na kumunzi*, go to a village.

*Pa, ku, mu*, are locative prepositions, 'from, at, in, to,' &c., but are used of many other relations, 'as, with, as to, concerning,' &c. They are commonly, but not always, treated as forming one word with the noun which they precede. E.g. *pa pewa pako*, or, *lako*, on

your shoulder; *kuuowa kunyinj*, in great fear; *potaya* (*pa kutaya*) *chakulya*, as to wasting food.

*Kuli* can be used for *ku*, 'concerning, as to,' e.g. *nikumvwa kuli weo*, I lately heard about you. Verbs in the infinitive are also used prepositionally, e.g. *kufuma*, 'from, out of,' *kufwika*, and *kutatika*, 'up to, to.'

'Without' may often be expressed by using the verb *sowa*, be without, or by the negatives *paliye*, *iai*, e.g. *afwika aliye chakulya*, he has arrived without food.

### CONJUNCTIONS.

Conjunctions are few and sparingly used. As simple connective, *na* is used between nouns, *ne* more commonly between clauses, also *ne apo*, *nipo*, *nepo*, i.e. and, and then, next, and so. 'But,' as marking a strong contrast, seems represented if at all by the use of *iai*, not so, on the contrary.

For conjunctions introducing dependent sentences see the following list, and also chap. vii, Notes on Syntax.

### INTERJECTIONS.

Interjections require familiarity to note and interpret. But there is little reason to doubt, that in ordinary unrestrained and especially excited conversation among themselves, Sengas, like Nyassas and other tribesmen, use interjections very largely for graphic and forcible description, especially of what is sudden, striking, or repeated, in movement, effect, or sensation—appealing through them largely to the sympathetic ear, as by gestures to the eye.

### LIST OF PREPOSITIONS AND CONJUNCTIONS.

-a, 'of,' used freely with nouns and adverbs to form compound prepositions.

*Apo*, when, where, then.  
*Iai*, but, on the contrary.  
*Ingawe*, lest, though, so that.  
*Itangila*, since.  
*Kati*, if, supposing, in case of.  
*Ku*, to, at, from, &c.  
*Kufuma*, from, out of.  
*Kuli*, about, than, as compared with.  
*Kuti*, that, saying that.  
*Mlandu* (*wa*), because (of).  
*Mpaka*, until, up to, as far as.

*Mu*, in, into, from within, &c.  
*Na*, and, with, by, &c.  
*Ne*, and, so; *ne apo*, *nipo*, and then, so.  
*Ngati*, if, though, supposing.  
*Fa*, at, from, to, with, in the manner of.  
*Fakuti*, because, since, whereas, inasmuch as.  
*Pambine*, or, or else.  
*Tatikile*, until, as far as.  
*Umo*, when, as.

## CHAPTER VII

## NOTES ON SYNTAX

DEPENDENT sentences, that is sentences which qualify (like an adverb or adjective) a principal sentence, and are not simply coupled or coordinated with it, may be in the form of

(1) The infinitive mood.

(2) The subjunctive mood.

(3) A conjunction followed by the indicative or subjunctive mood.

Some of these forms are here illustrated in connexion with common English conjunctions, and relatives.

1. 'Who, whom, which' (relative sentences).

There is no separate word or prefix corresponding to these relatives. When the subject of the qualifying verb is concerned, the verb is simply subjoined to the word qualified without change. E.g. *muntu echiya* is used for, a man who went, as well as, a man went; *inyina enivyala*, my mother who bore me, and, my mother bore me; *nyama zhunkala mchitoo*, the animals live in the valley, and, animals which live in the valley.

When however the object of the qualifying verb is concerned, then the objective prefix is transferred from its usual place immediately before the root and prefixed to the subjective prefix, and the result is a form closely resembling the common corresponding form in English. E.g. those that you gave me, *zila ziwiniŋa*; *vyonse viali navyo*, all that he has; *muntu mwetuma*, the man (whom, that) he sent.

A similar change of form is found in some of the dependent sentences following.

2. 'When, until, since, before, after,' &c. (temporal sentences).  
'When' may be expressed by

(1) The subjunctive with *ka*, of past or present time, e.g. *akaye*, when he comes; *akate kuya*, when he had gone; *nkalamu ikalye*, when the lion had eaten.

(2) *Apo* with indicative or subjunctive, e.g. *apo pechiya*, when he went (had gone). *Apo akafwike*, when he arrived.

(3) *Apo* followed by *pa-ti* and the future, of future time, e.g. *apo paniti niza niwele*, when (that) I come back; *apo pati azaze*, when (that) he comes.

When *apo* refers to the object of the verb following, *pa* is prefixed to the whole verb form, e.g. *apo pamupangwila*, at the time which you wish.

(4) *Pa* with the infinitive, of any time, e.g. *pakuya*, when going; *posila* (*pa-kusila*), when finished; *powela*, on return.

(5) The sequence of verbs only, especially in narrative, e.g. *ewela echita*, he returned, he did it, i.e. on return, he did it.

'Until,' *tatikile, mpaka*, e.g. *tatikile kukula kwake*, till he grew up; *mpaka pati aliye*, until (that) he shall pay.

'Since' (of time), e.g. *nitangila kuwa msaza*, since I was a child (lit. I started from being); *nifuma nenzi*, since I was (lit. I came from I was).

'After' (of time), e.g. *akasile kuya*, after he had gone; *posila kuya*, after he goes; *pavuli posila mwezi*, after the end of the month.

'Before' (of time), e.g. *pantanzi poyenda*, before going; *pantanzi potuende* (i.e. *pa-kuti-uende*), before (that) you go.

3. 'If,' supposing, on condition that, though (conditional sentences). These are expressed by *ngati, kati, ka, nga, sembe, ichiwa kuti*, &c., e.g. *akafwaya nongo, aope*, if he break the jar, let him fear (he will fear, he might be afraid); *anganifa, ningapoka*, if he offers (offered) it, I would take it; *ningati nammwawa, sembe nayopa*, if (or, though) I had heard him, I should have been afraid; *wantu angarwele, teningayope*, if the men (should) come back, I should not be afraid; *ichiwa kuti* (or *ngati, wangati, kati*) *walolezhya, wangaziwa*, if they had examined it, they would know (or *sembe tewaziwa*, they would not have known); *akaniila, tenti nise*, (even) if (though) he call me, I will certainly not come.

4. 'That,' (1) of reported speech (saying that), *kuti*, e.g. *enena kuti aliya*, he said that he had paid.

(2) In order that, to (of purpose), so as to, so that (final and consecutive sentences). These are represented by the subjunctive and infinitive, e.g. *nikuya nikamwe manzi*, I am going off to drink water; *eima kukonsha*, he went to inquire.

(3) In questions; e.g. *ni chinji ponikonsha (pa unikonsha)?* why is it that you ask me?

(4) Lest, that . . . not, is expressed by using the conditional tense-forms with final *a* or *e*; e.g. *umkate angawe*, hold him lest he fall, lit. he would (otherwise) fall; *telawila zingautuka*, he did not speak lest they (the animals) should run away; *nukuzhye, teunguziwe*, I tell you lest you should be ignorant, lit. (or) you would not know.

5. 'Because' (causal sentences). *Mlandu* is used as the conjunction in this sense; e.g. *nimnyata mlandu enipunzishisa*, I beat him because he robbed me.

6. 'As,' just as, according as (comparative sentences). *Umo* is used, followed by *mu* or *pa* prefixed to the verb; e.g. *umo mwechinena*, as he said; *umo mopangwila*, as he likes; *umo pamupangwila*, as you like.

'Ought,' 'should,' and words expressing moral obligation may be represented by using the conditional tense, or *viveme* (*parveme*) followed by subjunctive; e.g. *ungayende*, you should go; *viveme uende*, you had better go, it is right for you to go.

## CHAPTER VIII

### APPENDICES

#### I. MISCELLANEOUS SENTENCES AND PHRASES, ENGLISH AND SENGA.

(In addressing a person it is customary and courteous to use the plural, even to an inferior.)

Tell me, *niuzhye*.

Come and help me, *Zoo niavye*.

Come here, *Iza afa* (or, *pano*).

When (on what day) did you arrive here? *Zua lya kuni nkufwikapo?*

Five days ago, *Zua lya kasano*.

What o'clock is it? *Zua tiani* (what is the sun)?

It is . . . o'clock, *Zua li teti* (the sun is thus—as indicated by pointing).

What have you bought? *Wasita tiani?*

Buy me fowls for salt, *Nisitile munyu nkuku*.

Come back quickly, *Welani lomba pano* (or, *puruyowela*).

- Make haste! *Puvyisha!*
- Go away! *Nkoya(-ni)*, *pita(-ni)*, (peremptory) *fumapo*.
- Take and bring it here, *Uule uze nacho apa*.
- Do you know English? *Us'wa Chingereza?*
- Call him, *Muite, mwitani*.
- Where is . . . ? (a person), *Ali kuni . . . ?* (a place) *pali kuni . . . ?*
- Who is the man? *Ni wani wamuntu?*
- Who is this man? *Muntu uyu ni wani?*
- What is your name? *Nimwe wani zina lyanu?*
- Who are you? *Niwe (nimwe) wani?*
- How do you do? *Nunkala warweme* (are you in good circumstances)? *muli makosa* (are you strong, in good health)? *walala farweme* (have you slept well)? A courteous way of addressing a chief is *Taone, asikulu* (may I see you, Sir)? the reply being, *Taoneka* (I am ready to see you).
- Quite well, thank you, *Tunkala farweme* (or, *ti nakosa*) (I am well), *namwe muli makosa* (and are you well)? *talala farweme* (I have had a good night).
- It is cold to-day, *Lelo mpepo, kulutontole*.
- It is cloudy, *Kuli mikumbi*. There is no sun, *Paliye zua*.
- Thank you (after receiving), *Nakuta*.
- No, thank you (declining), *Nilukute*.
- What do you want? *Musakilanji? musowa chinji?*
- Put it ready, *Ika pasweta*.
- Do as well as you can, *Chitani umo muziwila*.
- Bring me firewood, *Niletele nkuni*.
- You will hurt yourself, *Uza ulichite*.
- May I pass (proceed)? *Nipite? nipiteko?*
- As you like, *Umo mupangwila*.
- Perhaps I shall get well, *Nganza nipole*.
- My head aches, *Mutu ukalipa*.
- The boy is idle, *Wamwana aliye mpamvu*.
- Who has broken this cup? *Ni wani afwaya kopo ili?*
- Good-bye (to one leaving), *Muyende* (or, *mupite*) *farweme*; (to one staying), *Mukale* (or, *musale, nkalani, salani*) *farweme*.
- What are we to do? *Tichitenji?*
- When did it happen? *Zua lyakwe lya kuni* (i. e. on what day)?
- Have you done as I told you? *Wachita umo munikuzhya?*



You made an agreement with me, did you not? *Mwizhyana nane, iai?*

I have not got men, *Nikaliotatika wantu.*

Some are unwilling, *Wambi teopangwa.*

Some are working in the fields, *Wambi ali olima (mmunda).*

Give me their names, *Nitule mazina ao.*

One man has run away, *Muntu ali umo autuka.*

Follow him, and if you see him bring him back, *Umkonbe, ukamona umwuzhye.*

There is danger ahead, *Pali polusa pantanzi.*

Set men to keep awake all night, *Ika wantu awe tuni usiku wouse.*

Send those loads (cases, boxes) on in front, *Tangizhye viya vila.*

Keep an eye on the loads (bales) left behind, *Lolezhya mitolo iyo vasalila.*

Fasten the box well, *Manga chichiya parweme.*

Shut (open) the door, *Zala (zula) chisasa.*

I do not understand, *Tenikumvwa.*

Do you understand? *Ukumvwa?*

Wait a bit, *Lindilile patonto.* Be quiet! *Iwani chelele.*

You can go, *Nkoyani, pitani.*

Are there any porters here? *Pali wantu afa atwali a viya?*

I want twenty-two men, *Nusakila wantu makumi awili na awili.*

I shall give them the usual pay, *Nizawalipile chilambu chimo cha siku zhonse.*

My intention is, to visit the neighbouring villages, *Nzelu zhangu ni kuyungilila mtuminzi ya pafupi.*

Let us agree as to wages, *Tiuzhyane chilambu.*

Half a yard a day, *Mkono zua limo.*

What are these things? *Vivintu ni vinji?*

It is fine to-day, *Kuwama lelo.*

I know all kinds of work, *Nuziwa milimo yonse.*

Nothing is too much for me, *Patiye chunikanga.*

I will go where there are Europeans, *Nizaye pati Azungu.*

We are exhausted with hunger, *Tavupa na njala.*

We want just a pinch of salt as a relish, *Tusowa tumunyu totila ndiwo.*

2. THE FOLLOWING IS A TRANSLATION BY A SENGA OF A SIMPLE NYASA STORY.

*A Man and his Wives.*

(1) Once upon a time a man married two wives. And he hoed two rice-patches, and made a boundary between them, and told his wives, To-day I want to allot the patches; one of you take her patch and sow it, and the other the same. And his wives consented.

*Muntu umo kale kalingula akazi awili. Nipo pechilima vipoka vivwili vya mpunga, nkupakana mpaka pakati, nepetchauzhya akazi wakwe, Lelo nupangwa kuti niyawe vipoka, mwiyakwe aule chipoka chakwe akomole, mwiyakwe pameneapo naye. Akazi nkuzumela.*

(2) Both women sowed rice, and when it was time to keep off the birds, one of the women took her water-jar and placed it on the boundary as a drinking-place. And her companion planted some pumpkin seeds near the other woman's water-jar. And a sucker of the pumpkin plant grew over the rim of the jar, and so a pumpkin got inside the jar, and grew big inside it. And now they could not get the pumpkin out again, for the jar was too narrow at the mouth.

*Wonse nkukomola mpunga, nyengo yotandila tuni, mwanakazi mwiyakwe nkuyula nongo yakwe nkuika pakati ya mpaka kuti zhomwelapo manzi. Mwanakazi mwiyakwe nkukomola mbuto zhya nyungu pafupi na nongo iyo ya mwiyakwe. Nipewitambalala msisi wa nyungu nkuya pita pakanwa pa nongo, uchiwa mungu kulowa mkati ya nongo kaukulila mwamene. Nipo lombwa wenzokanga kufumya mungu panja, mlandu nongo yenzi itonto pakanwa.*

(3) So one day the woman who owned the water-jar said to the owner of the pumpkin, I say, I want my water-jar to take to the village. Go and take out your pumpkin. The other woman went, and tried to break it up inside the jar, saying, Let me get it out in bits. But the owner forbade her, saying, Don't do that. So she said, Well, shall I cook it inside the jar? But she refused, No! no! I won't have you making my jar all grimy.

So the other woman said, Well, take the pumpkin and the jar too. But she refused again, Not I! do you think I am hungry and

want to make a meal of your pumpkin? You had better get your pumpkin out. So there was a quarrel about it between these women.

*Nipo enena mwanakazi mnecho wa nongo kumwuzhya mnecho wa mungu, Wewo, nupangwa nongo yangu niule nayo kumwuzi. Nkoya ukasumye mungu wako. Mwanakazi uyu mwiyakwe epita esaka kufwayila mwamene umo, kunena, Nifumye tutonto tutonto. Mwine wa nongo nkukana, enena kuti, Ng'ang'a! Nkunena kuti, Mweo, nipikile mwamene mkati wa nongo? Nekana kuti, Ng'ang'a! tenupangaba kutuike misimbi nongo yangu.*

*Nkulawila kuti, Ule weo mungu na nongo yako pamo. Nkukana soti, Nga neo! mwaniona kuti nina njala nkupangwa kunichizhya neo na mungu wako. Mwenzepe mulomo pamene apo penzi au wanakazi.*

(4) Now, what was the husband to do to make peace between his wives? The husband wanted to break the jar and throw away the pumpkin. But the wife who owned the jar said, If you want to break my jar, let me go too. I shall go home and stay there and have nothing to do with you. The husband said, Woman, you are a bad lot. The woman answered, Am I really a bad lot? yet I am only vexed about my jar, and want nothing else beside.

*Lomba achitenji uyu mwanalume kuwatemwanisha akazi wakwe? Mwanalume esakofwaya nongo na kutaya mungu. Mwanakazi mwine wa nongo nkulawila, Kati upangwa kufwaya nongo yangu, neo nileke. Nikuya kukwasu kunkala uko kulekana nawe. Mwanalume nkulawila, Mwanakaziwe, weo ni mwiipa chiyi. Mwanakazi kayasuka, Ni chendi neo ni mwiipa? nawe neo nulila nongo yangu, tenupangwa chintu chiyakwe.*

(5) The husband reflected, How can I contrive to make peace between them? Now just see the husband's clever trick. He feigned sickness, and in the evening pretended he was very ill indeed. Both his wives slept in the same house that night, because their husband was seriously ill. And the women tried to cook dainty dishes; Let us see if we can cook for a sick man. But he refused food, would not eat at all, enduring his hunger till it was morning.

*Mwanalume elukana, Nichite nzelu zhanji kuwatemwanisha wantu awo? Lomba uone weo nzelu zha uyu mwanalume. Nku-*

*wepeshya  
Akazi wa  
mwanalume  
kula vizi  
vilyo, kul*

(6) In t  
to cry bit  
him, My  
I want no  
you to go  
to-day.  
them, the  
her lap, a  
in her la  
that the  
at once  
it, so tha  
and cool  
sickness  
band's s

*Uma  
muland  
Mwana  
tenupan  
muule  
kazi an  
nongo  
wa mu  
mnecho  
nkumu  
kaule n  
nkufik  
Wana  
kusila*

*wephezha kulwala, mchingulo nepechilichita kati olwala chendi. Akazi wakwe wonse awili nkulala ng'anda imo zua ilyo, mlandu mwanalume walwalisha. Nipo wanakazi nkuyezhya kupika vyakula vivweme, Kano timpikile muntu alulwele. Neyapo nkukana vilyo, kulya iai, lalilile njala yakwe kuzano mawa.*

(6) In the morning the mother of the husband arrived, and began to cry bitterly because her son was sick. And his mother asked him, My son, would you like us to cook some food. He said, I want no other sort of food, but if there is a pumpkin I do want you to get it and buy salt and cook it, and I think I may eat it to-day. Those two women were there on the spot, and one of them, the owner of the jar, took the head of the man and laid it in her lap, and the owner of the pumpkin took his feet and laid them in her lap. And the woman who owned the jar, when she heard that the man wanted a pumpkin, said to the other woman, Go at once and break the jar, and bring the pumpkin and let us cook it, so that our husband may eat. She ran and got the pumpkin, and cooked it, and gave it him to eat, and he got well of his sickness. So those women were reconciled because of their husband's sickness. And so the trouble ended.

*Umarwa nkufwika wama inyina a mwanalume, enzolila chendi mulandu ni kulwala mwana wakwe. Anyina nkukonsha kuti, Mwana wangu, upangwa vyakulya tikafike? Elawila, Neo tenupangwa vyakulya vimbi, napo nupangwa kati ulipo ulungu muule mkasite munyu mpfike, neo nti niza nilye lelo. Awo wanakazi awili enzi pamene apo, mwanakazi mwiyakwe mwine wa nongo nkuula mutu wa mulume kuika pa mendo akwe, mnecho wa mungu nkuula mendo kuika pa mendo akwe. Ne mwanakazi mnecho wa nongo apo pechimwira kuti mlume opangwa mungu nkunwuzhya mwiyakwe kuti, Nkoya lombha pano kufwaya nongo kaule mungu tipike, mulume wasu ulye. Nkuutuka kuula mungu nkupika kumupa kulya. Akate kulya, na kulwala kwake kapola. Wanakazi wala kazitenwana, mlandu wolwala mwanalume. Ne kusila kwa mlandu.*

3. THE LORD'S PRAYER, AND THE TEN COMMANDMENTS  
IN SENGA.

## (a) The LORD's Prayer.

Wata seo, muli pamulu,  
Zina lyanu lituuke,  
Ufumu wanu uze,  
Ivyo vimupangwila vichitiwe,  
pansi kati na pamulu,  
Mutipe lelo chakulya chasu cha zua,  
Mutilekele mangarwa yasu,  
kati nase tiwalekele ena mangarwa na seo,  
Musatipelekezhya poyezhya,  
Mutipuzumuzhye paipa. Amina.

## (b) The Ten Commandments (shortened).

- (1) Neo Asikulu LEZA wako, usamzumela Lesa umbi, neo nika.
- (2) Usalichitila chintu pambine chosepa pambine cholemba, cholinganizhya na chintu kumulu kumikumbi, pambine cha pachalo pansi, pambine cha pamanzi pansi pa chalo. Usachiletelela, usachilambilila. . . . .
- (3) Usatula tiala zina lya Asikulu wako LEZA, pakuti Asikulu uzosonge mlandu muntu ula ukamtula zina lyakwe tiala.
- (4) Ulukane zua lyopumula, uliike pa lyeka. Uchite mulimo wako siku zisano na imo, kukata mulimo wako wonse. Zua lya siku zisano na ziwili ni zua lyopumula Asikulu LEZA wako. . . .
- (5) Ulemeke auso na nyoko, nsiku zhyako zinkale zinyinji ku-chalo icho chokupa Asikulu LEZA wako.
- (6) Usapaya.
- (7) Usachita kukunda.
- (8) Usapunzha.
- (9) Usamwopezhya mwiwako pa mlandu.
- (10) Usakumbwa ng'anda ya mwiwako, usakumbwa mkazi wa mwiwako, pambine muntu wakwe, mwanalume na mwanakazi, pambine ng'ombe yakwe, pambine cavalo yakwe, pambine chintu chiyakwe chili chakwe.

MENTS,

PART II

ENGLISH-SENGA VOCABULARY

PREFACE

A BANTU dialect may be said to consist of that particular selection of words and forms from the common stock of Bantu which is in general use in a particular tribe or district. Words and forms absolutely limited to any one dialect are comparatively rare. This vocabulary contains a specimen of the Senga dialect as spoken on the Lower Luangwa in North-Eastern Rhodesia. As such, it includes of course many words common in other Bantu dialects, near and distant, and some which might be more correctly called Kunda, this being a neighbouring dialect, with which the Sengas seem most frequently to supplement their own. The resemblance of Senga to other dialects westward of Lake Nyasa and in several respects to Swahili will be easily recognized.

Verbs are usually given in their simplest form. The applied form ending in *-la (i)la, (e)la*, is very commonly used whenever in English a preposition would be used after the verb, and the causative form, ending in *-sha, -zha, -zhya*, in place of an adverb of emphasis or intensity.

The plural of nouns is indicated in brackets, and if the same as the singular by (—). The class of a noun is also sometimes shown by its proper concord-form of the preposition *-a* in brackets.

*-o* as the first letter of an adjective is usually a contraction for *a u*, or *a ku*, i. e. it indicates the invariable part of an adjectival expression formed of a noun, or of an infinitive used as a noun, preceded by the variable preposition *-a*.

## ABBREVIATIONS

n.	=	noun.
a.	=	adjective.
v.	=	verb.
act.	=	active.
ps.	=	passive.
nt.	=	neuter.
ap.	=	applied form of verbs.
cs.	=	causative   "   "
int.	=	intensive   "   "
rv.	=	reversive   "   "
rp.	=	reciprocal   "   "
ad.	=	adverb.
pr.	=	pronoun.
prp.	=	preposition.
intr.	=	interjection.
conj.	=	conjunction.

# ENGLISH-SENGA VOCABULARY

## ABANDON

**Abandon**, v. *sia, leka*, (leave behind) *salishya*.

**Ability**, n. (intelligence) *nzelu*, (energy) *mpamvu*.

**Be Able**, v. (know how) *ziwa*, (have strength) *(ku)wa na mpamvu*. He was not able to load the gun, *wenzeve mpamvu zhya kuti aiyangile futi*.

**Abode**, n. *ponkala* (i.e. *pa kunkala*, place of residence).

**Abound**, v. *paka*, *(ku)wa nyinji*.

**About**, ad. prp. (around) *mbali zhyonse, pouse*, (nearly) *patonto, pa-fupi*, (as to) *ku, pa, kuli*.

**Above**, ad. prp. (of place) *pamulu (pa)*, *kumulu (wa)*, (exceeding) *kupula, kuli*.

**Abscess**, n. *chilonda (vi-L)*.

**Be Absent**, v. he is absent (not here) *tealipo*.

**Abundant**, a. *nyinji* (see **Abound**).

**Abuse**, v. (use bad language to) *tukana*.

**Accept**, v. (receive) *poka, pokedela*, (agree to) *zumela*.

**Accident**, n. (disaster) *ntamu (-)*, *maleza*, (mischance) *leza*. By accident (unintentionally) *paliyelona, paliuchita lona*.

**Accompany**, v. *yenda pamo*, (follow) *konka, konkana na*.

**Accomplish**, v. (do) *chita, tatika*, (complete) *sila, silishya*. Be accomplished in, *ziwa, wamya*.

**Account**, n. (story) *chisimikizi (vi-s.)*, (news) *mutende (mi-t.)*. Make an account (calculate), *penda*. On account of, *mlandu wa*.

**Accuse**, v. (a person) *songa muntu mandu*. Accuse falsely, *wepeshya, simikishya*. Accuse each other, *ushyana mandu*.

## AFFIRM

**Be Accustomed**, v. *yoelela*.

**Ache**, v. *chita, kalipa*. My head aches, *mutu ukalipa*.

**Acid**, a. *-olulu* (i.e. *-a ululu*, acidity).

**Acknowledge**, v. *zumela, zumelezhya*.

**Acquit**, v. *lezhya mandu*.

**Across**, ad. Put (lay) across, *pilingishya*. Go across, *tauka*. Convey across, *taushya*.

**Act, Action**, n. *mchitilo (ma-ch.)*, *kuchita*.

**Active**, a. *-a mpamvu*.

**Actual**, a. *-endi, -a chendi, nga-o*.

The actual arrival, *kufwika ngako*.

**Add to**, v. *kushya, yangishya*.

**Be Adjacent, Adjoin**, v. *paka*.

**Administer**, v. (arrange, adjust) *wamya, wamilishya*.

**Admire**, v. *kanganishyirwa*.

**Admit**, v. (let in) *loweshya*, (receive) *pokedela*, (confess) *zumela, zumelezhya*.

**Adorn**, v. *samika, wamishya*.

**Adult**, a. *-kulu*.

**Adulterate**, v. (spoil) *ifya*, (alter) *yalushya*, (by mixing) *yovushya*.

**Adulterer, n. uchende (-)**.

**Adultery, n. uchende**. Commit adultery, *chita uchende, chinda mkasi wa mwine wakwe, kunda*.

**Advance**, v. *pita* (or, *yenda*) *panzansi*. Be in advance, *tangila*. (Of money), see **Lend**.

**Advantageous, a. -weme**.

**Advise, give Advice**, v. *ushya nzelu*.

**Adze, n. mbazo (-)**.

**Afloat**, ad. Get a canoe afloat, *wuka uwato*. Be afloat, *nyaya, wuka*.

**Affirm**, v. *nena nde* (say yes).

**Be Afraid**, v. *yopa, (ku)wa na mwezo*. Make afraid, *yofya*.



- After, ad. prp. *pavuli, kuvuli*.  
 Follow after, *konka*. Go after (seek), *sakila*. After two days, *siku zivili kuswa*. After eating, *posila kulya*.  
 Afternoon, n. *zua losendama*.  
 Afterwards, ad. *pavuli, posila*.  
 Again, ad. *soli, kawili*. Again and again, *kawili kawili, chaka na chaka*. Do (say) again, *weleshya*.  
 Age, n. See *Old*.  
 Agitate, v. (excite) *usha mtima*.  
 Ago, ad. Long ago, *kale*.  
 Agony, n. Cause agony, *lumi-zhya, chitishya*.  
 Agree, v. (make a bargain) *ushyana*, (consent) *zumela*, (be alike, suitable) *lingana*, (be friendly) *temwana*. I agree with him, *mtimangu ni umo nawo*.  
 Be Agreeable, v. *wama, temwezhyha, pangwa*.  
 Agriculture, n. *kulima*.  
 Be Aground, v. *sama*.  
 Aim, v. n. See *Gun, Intention*.  
 Air, n. *mpepo* (—). v. (as clothes) *yanika*.  
 Alarm, n. *uyopa, mweso*. v. *yofya, yofyishya*.  
 Alike, a. *-olingana, chimwana chimo*.  
 Alive, a. *moyo, -na moyo*.  
 All, a. *-onse*.  
 Allot, v. *yarwa, yawanya*, (to) *yawila*.  
 Allow, v. (assent to) *zumela*.  
 Allow to come in, *lowezhyha*.  
 Almost, ad. *patonto, pafupi*.  
 Alone, a. (only, solitary) *-eka* (and in some contracted forms, *-oka*).  
 Already, ad. He is already dead, *asila kufwa, atangila kufwa, alufwile kale*.  
 Also, conj. ad. *na, nipo*, (besides) *soti*.  
 Alter, v. *yaluka*, (act.) *yaluzhyha*.  
 Although, conj. *ngati*.  
 Always, ad. *siku zhyonse*.  
 Amaze, v. *kauganishya*.  
 Ambiguous, a. *-a usetu zivili*.  
 Ambush, n. Lie in ambush for, *fsamila*.  
 Among, prp. *pakali pa*. Out man among them, *munu una mwiyao*.  
 Amount, n. *chimwana* (vi-m), *msinku* (vi-s), *mulungo*.  
 Amuse, v. *sekehya*. Amuse oneself (idly), *tandala*.  
 Ancestors, n. *wantu a kale*.  
 Ancient, a. *-a kale*. Be ancient, *kota*.  
 And, conj. *na, ne, nipo*.  
 Anecdote, n. *chisimikizi* (vi-s).  
 Anger, n. *kukalipa, ukali*.  
 Be Angry, v. *kalipa, kalala*. Be angry with each other, *kalipishyana*.  
 Animal, n. *nyama* (—).  
 Anklet, n. (thick, brass) *msenu* (mi-s).  
 Ankle, n. *fundo* (ma-f) *lya kwendo*.  
 Announce, v. *ushya, nena*.  
 Annoy, v. *tatika, tamanya, kululusha*.  
 Anoint, v. *zola, zoleka*. Anoint oneself, *pwatika, lizola*.  
 Another, a. (of same kind) *-yakwa* (*-yao*), (different) *-mbi*. Give another blow, *weleshya kunyata, nyata soti*.  
 Answer, v. *yasuka, lawizhyha*, (to a call) *itarwa*.  
 Ant, n. (white) *muswe* (*miswe*), (other kinds) *mnyanyao* (a-m), *mpansi* (—).  
 Appeal, n. Make an appeal for, *tetelela*.  
 Appear, v. (come in sight) *oneka*.  
 Appease, v. (pacify) *pushya*.  
 Applaud, v. (praise) *lumba*, (with loud cries) *lilizhyha ntungulu*.  
 Apply, v. (as paint, oil, &c.) *zola, zoleka*.  
 Appoint, v. (make, institute) *chita, ika*, (order) *uzhya*.  
 Approach, v. *fwika* (or, *(ku)-za*, *(ku)-ya*) *pafupi*.  
 Approve, v. *zumela*, (praise) *lumba*.  
 Argue, v. (together) *letana, ushyana mlandu*.  
 Argument, n. *mlandu* (mi-l).  
 Arm, n. *kwanya* (*manja*).

Armlet, n. (thick, brass) *msensa* (mi-s.).

Armpit, n. *mkwapa* (—).

Arrange, v. *wamya*, *wamilizhya*, *ika paweme, longa*.

Arrive, v. *fwiika*, (*ku*)*za, zila*.

Arrow, n. *mumwi* (mi-m.).

Art, n. (skilled work) *mulimo wa ng'anga* (or, *wa misili*), (skill in work) *unganga, umisili, maluso*, (cunning) *kuchenjela*.

Artery, n. *lusifa* (ma-l.).

Be Artful, v. *chenjela*.

Article, n. (thing) *chintu* (vintu).

Artisan, Artist, n. *ng'anga* (—), *misili* (a-m.).

As, conj. (1) as (like as, as if, as though) *ngati, kati*, (2) (since, because) *pakuti*, (3) (while, when, according as) *umo mu*.

Ascend, v. *kwela*.

Ash, Ashes, n. *lito litua, lito lya pa ziko*.

Be Ashamed, v. *chita nsoni*, (*ku*)*wa na nsoni*. Make ashamed, *chichya nsoni*.

Ashore, ad. Draw ashore a canoe, *vuula uwato*.

Ask, v. (beg) *lomba, senga*, (question) *konzha*.

Be Asleep, v. *lala chitulo*.

Assemble, v. (nt.) *ungana, longana*, (act.) *unganzizhya, longa, pima*.

Assembly, n. *mulongu* (mi-l.).

Assent, v. *zumela, zumelezhya*.

Assist, v. *avya*.

Astonish, v. *kangizhya, kanganzizhya*.

At, prp. *pa, ku, mu*.

Be Athletic, v. (strong in limbs) *kosa viso*.

Atone, v. (pay) *lipa*.

Attempt, v. *yeshya*.

Attend, v. (give attention) *mwawa, mwila*, (as doctor) *alika*.

Attentive, a. -a *kumwawa, -omwawila*.

Be Audible, v. *mweweka*.

Aunt, n. (mother's sister) *wama* (—).

Authority, n. *mpamvu*.

Avarice, n. *tumbwili*.

Be Avaricious, v. *kumbwila chuma*.

Avengo, v. (oneself on) *welezhya, lipishya*.

Avoid, v. (get away from, out of the way of) *sitika*.

Await, v. *lindilila*.

Awake, v. *uka*, (act.) *usha*. Be awake, *kala tuni*.

Be Aware, v. *ziwa*.

Axe, n. *katemo* (tu-t.), (large) *chitemo* (vi-t.). See Adze.

Babble, v. *welweta*.

Baby, n. *lucheche* (ma-l.).

Bachelor, n. *mpala* (a-p.).

Back, n. (of body) *msana* (mi-s.), (back parts) *kuvuli kwa mwili*. On the back, *ku msana*. At the back, behind, *pavuli, panseli*. ad. *kuvuli*. Go back, *wela*. Send (give) back, *welezhya*.

Backwards, ad. *pavuli, kuvuli*.

Bad, a. -*ifa*, -*wi*, -a *chichiwi*. Go bad, *ola*.

Badly, ad. *viipa, viwi*.

Badness, n. *uipa, uwi*.

Baffle, v. *kanga, kangizhya, pengeshya*. Be baffled, *kangirwa*, (fail) *shama*.

Bag, n. (of skin) *nkoma* (—), (plaited) *mtolo* (mi-t.), *nyencele* (—), (of bark cloth) *ng'ama*.

Baggage, n. (loads) *viya*, (property) *mpango*, (articles) *vintu*.

Bait, n. (for fish, &c.) *nyambo* (—).

Bake, v. *yocha*.

Baldness, n. *pala*. He is bald, *ena pala*.

Bamboo, n. *sasu* (a-s.).

Banana, n. (plant) *konde* (ma-k.), (single fruit) *chikonde* (vi-k.), (bunch of fruit) *mulinga* (mi-l.), *wa vikonde*.

Band, n. (for binding) *chomangila*, (a company) *mulongo* (mi-l.).

Banish, v. (drive away) *utusha*, (make migrate) *nyelezhya*.

Banjo, n. (native) *chilumbu*, (vi-l.).

Bank, n. (heap, mound) *ntutu*

- (—), *kapili* (tu-p.), (of river, side) *mbali* (—), (dry ground, land) *silya* (ma-s.). Further (near) bank, *silya lila* (lino).
- Baobab**, n. (tree) *muuyu* (miuyu), (fruit) *mbyu* (—).
- Bar**, n. (of door) *mpilingizhyo*, (barrier) *kawindi* (tu-w.).
- Barber**, n. See **Cut** (hair).
- Bare**, a. (open, cleared) *-sveta*.
- Bargain**, n. *sita*, *sitana*, *chitosita*. Conclude a bargain (agreement), *uzhyana*.
- Bark**, n. (of tree, rough outer) *chikwa* (*vikwa*), (inner fibrous) *nizi* (—), (for cloth) *ng'anza* (a-ng.), (of animal) *lizu* (ma-l.).
- Barrel**, n. (of gun), *muluti* (mi-l.).
- Barren**, a. A barren woman, *chumba* (vi-u.).
- Barrier**, n. *kawindi* (tu-w.), (ram-part) *linga* (ma-l.).
- Barter**, v. *sita*, *sitana*, *chitosita*. Barter salt for fowls, *sita munyu nkuku* (i. e. buy fowls for salt). Ap. *sitila*. Cs. *sitishya* (i. e. employ in bartering). n. *usita*. Barter goods, *vintu vyosita*.
- Base**, a. *-sali -osali* (i. e. *-a usali*, baseness).
- Basin**, n. See **Vessel**.
- Be Bashful**, v. *chita nsoni*, (*ku*)*wa na nsoni*.
- Bask**, v. (at fire, in sun) *yota* (*mulilo*, *ua*).
- Basket**, n. (round, deep, close woven) *chitundu* (vi-t.).
- Bat**, n. (animal) *nswa* (—).
- Bathe**, v. *samba*.
- Battle**, n. *nkondo* (—), *ku**kwa nkondo*, *kunyatana*.
- Be**, v. (*ku*)*wa*, *-li*, *ni*. Imperat. *iwa iwani*.
- Bead**, n. (large dark) *ulungu* (—), (small white) *liche* (ma-l.), (for necklaces) *uzimbwa*.
- Beak**, n. *mulomo* (mi-l.).
- Bean**, n. (one kind of) *nyemba* (—).
- Bear**, v. *twala*, *ula*, (produce) *vyala*, (of fruit) *twala*, (endure) *pila*.
- Beard**, n. *ndevu* (—).
- Bearer**, n. *mtwali* (a-t.).
- Beast**, n. *nyama* (—).
- Beat**, v. *nyata*, (of heart, pulse) *tutumila*, (overcome) *werya*, *tet-zhya*. Be beaten (yield), *teta*.
- Beautiful**, a. *uweme*, *-owama*.
- Beauty**, n. *uweme*, *kurwama*.
- Because**, conj. *pakui*, *mlandu*.
- Beckon**, v. *cheushya*.
- Become**, v. (*ku*)*wa*, *tatika*. They have become dry, *vyatatika kuyuma*.
- Bed**, **Bed Frame**, **Bedstead**, n. *mariri*, (the legs) *mpanda*.
- Bedding**, n. See **Mat**, **Cloth**.
- Bee**, n. *nziwu* (—).
- Bee-Hive**, n. *hupako* (ma-l.).
- Beer**, n. *walwa*.
- Befall**, v. (happen) *pona*, *ponela*.
- Before**, ad, prp. (forward, in front) *pantanzi*. Go before, *tanga*, *tangisa*. Send before, *tangula*, *tangishya*, (in front of) *pa meno a*.
- Beg**, v. (request) *lomba*, (as beggar) *senga*, (implore) *lambilila*.
- Beg for mercy**, *tetelela*.
- Beget**, v. *vyala*.
- Begin**, v. (be first) *tatika*, *tangila*, (make a start on) *ima*, *kaba*. To begin with, in the beginning, *potatika*.
- On Behalf of**, prp. *mlandu wa*.
- Behaviour**, n. *machitilo*.
- Behind**, ad, prp. *paruli* (*pa*), (concealed by) *kunsei kwa*. Follow behind, *konka*.
- Belief**, n. *mwano* (includes hearing, accepting, obeying).
- Believe**, v. *mwawa*, *mwwila*, *zumeleshya*.
- Bellows**, n. *mwukuto* (—). Blow with bellows, *vukuta*.
- Belly**, n. *zumo* (ma-v.).
- Belong**, v. It belongs to him, *iyi ni chuma chakwe*, *iwo ni mwine wakwe* (he is its owner).
- Beloved**, a. *otemweka*, *-opang-wika*.
- Below**, ad, prp. *pansi* (*pa*), *ku-nyansi*.
- Belt**, n. *chikowe* (vi-k.).

Bend, v. (round) *peta*, (down, nt.) *elama*.  
 Beneath, ad. prp. *pansi (pa)*.  
 Benefactor, n. Be a benefactor to, *shukishya, chita vivweme*.  
 Benefit, n. *shuko (ma-s.)*. Get benefit, *shuka*.  
 Bequeath, v. *salishya*.  
 Be Bereaved, v. (by death), *fwil- wa*.  
 Beseech, v. *lambilila, katizhya kulomba*.  
 Beside, ad. (by side of) *pambali, mbali*, (in addition to) *soti*.  
 Best, a. *-weme*. It is better, you had better, *vivweme, sembe*.  
 Between, ad. prp. *mkati, pakati*.  
 Beverage, n. *chakumwa (vya-k.)*.  
 Bewail, v. *lilila*.  
 Beware, v. (guard oneself) *lisunga*.  
 Bewilder, v. *kanganishya*.  
 Bewitch, v. *loa*.  
 Beyond, ad. prp. *pantansi pa, kupula*.  
 Big, a. *-kulu*.  
 Bind, v. *manga*.  
 Bird, n. *koni (tuni)*, (large) *chini (vyuni)*.  
 Bit, n. (small piece) *katonto (tu-t.)*. All in bits, *tutonto toka*.  
 Bite, v. *luna*, (hard) *lumishya*.  
 Bitter, a. (to taste) *-olulu* (i. e. -a ululu, bitterness), *-kali*. Make bitter, *kalipizhya*.  
 Black, a. *-fipa*. A black man, *muntu mfipa*. Become black, *fipa*. Make black, *fipizhya*. n. (colour) *ufipa*.  
 Blacksmith, n. *mufuti wa chela (afuli a yela)*.  
 Blade, n. (of knife, &c.) *utumba, mupampantali*.  
 Blaze, v. *yaka*, (shine) *yezima*, (of sun) *walishya*.  
 Bleed, v. (nt.) *fuma mlopa*, (act.) *lumika*.  
 Blessing, n. (favour, kind gift) *shuko (ma-s.)*.  
 Be Blind, v. *tulika menso*. A blind person, *mpofu (a-p.)*.

Blood, n. *mlopa*.  
 Bloodshed, n. *upayi*.  
 Blood-vessel, n. *lusipa (ma-l.)*.  
 Bloom, Blossom, v. *tumba, malua*.  
 Blow, v. (with lips) *fwuzila*, (the nose) *mina*, (as wind) *pita*, (with bellows) *vukuta*. n. strike a blow, *nyata*.  
 Blue, a. *-fipa* (i. e. dark).  
 Blunder, v. *cheneka*.  
 Be Blunt, v. *funala*. A blunt knife, *uluwezi ofunala* (or, *osalu- mata*).  
 Bluster, v. *meka*. n. *malizu omeka*.  
 Board, n. (wood) *chimuti chopampantala (vimiti)*, (daily food) *posho*. Put on board, *pakizhya*. Go on board, *pakila, lowa*.  
 Boast, v. *meka*.  
 Boat, n. (canoe) *uwato (ma-w.)*.  
 Body, n. *mwili (mi-w.)*.  
 Bog, n. *nsansa* (—).  
 Boil, v. nt. (be hot) *pya*, (be on the boil) *tapata*. Boil away, *pwilila*, Act. (of fluids) *tapatisha*, (of meat, &c.) *lungushya*.  
 Boil, n. (sore, abscess) *chilonda (vi-l.)*.  
 Bold, a. He is bold, *alukose mtima, aliye mwezi*.  
 Bolt, n. (of door) *kapilingishyo (tu-p.)*.  
 Bone, n. *chifupa (vi-f.)*.  
 Border, n. (boundary) *mpaka (mi-p.)*.  
 Bore, v. (a hole) *chita mbolyo, tulika*, (with stake) *kumba*, (tease) *tatika*.  
 Be Born, v. *vyalwa, vyalikwa*. He was born there, *wazyalikwila apo*.  
 Borrow, v. *zhyamika* (also, lend), (get goods on credit) *fiala, (ku)lya, lyela*.  
 Both, a. *-wili, -onse, -wili, -wili pamo*. Both—and, *na—na*.  
 Bottle, n. (native, gourd, &c.) *nsupa* (—), *lukunku (ma-l.)*.  
 Bottom, n. *pansi*.  
 Bough, n. *nsambo (mi-s.)*.

- Bound, v. *chilupa*.  
 Bound, Boundary, n. *mpaka* (mi-f.). He made a boundary between, *nkupakana mpaka pakati*.  
 Bow, n. (weapon) *uta* (*mauta*). v. (bend down) *elama*.  
 Bowels, n. *mala*, *vyommala*.  
 Bowl, n. See Vessel.  
 Boy, n. (male child) *mwana mlume*, (young) *msaza* (a-s.), (lad) *mlumbwana* (a-l.).  
 Bracelet, n. (thick, brass) *msensa* (mi-s.).  
 Brains, n. (substance) *tompwe* (—), (sense) *nzeli* (—).  
 Branch, n. (of tree) *msambo* (mi-s.).  
 Brand, n. (mark) *chilembo* (vi-l.), (torch) *mwenji* (mi-t.).  
 Brandish, v. *yezhya*.  
 Brave, a. *-okosa mtima*, *-liye mwezo*.  
 Brawl, n. (quarrel) *mulomo* (mi-l.), (fighting) *kunyatana*.  
 Breadth, *mutumba*.  
 Break, v. (in two, open, off, &c.) *tyola*, (nt.) *tyoka*. Break in pieces, *fwaya*, (nt.) *fwaiika*. Break down (as house), *boozhya*, (nt.) *booka*. Break in (tame), *teka*.  
 Breast, n. (human) *chifua* (vi-f.), (of woman) *ziwa* (ma-z.), (animal) *katiwi* (tu-t.).  
 Breath, n. *mpuye*, *mpepo ya mala*.  
 Breathe, v. *fwaza*.  
 Breed, v. *vyalishya*.  
 Breeze, n. *mpepo itonto*.  
 Brew, v. (beer) *yenga* (*walwa*).  
 Brick, n. *nchelwa* (—).  
 Bridge, n. (as a structure) *ulalo*, (as a place) *folalo*.  
 Brigand, n. *kapondo* (tu-p.).  
 Be Bright, v. (shine) *yezima*, (as fire) *yaka*, (sun) *wala*, (place lighted up) (*ku*)*wa -sweta*. Make bright, *yezimishya*, (polish, rub) *tuula*.  
 Brim, n. *mbali*. Fill to brim, *zwashya mpaka nombali*.  
 Bring, v. *leta*, *ula*, *twala*. Bring me, *niletele*, *nulile*. Bring up (rear), *lela*.  
 Brink, n. (of river) *mbali*, *silya* (ma-s.).  
 Broad, a. *-kulu mutumba*.  
 Broil, v. *yocha*.  
 Be Broken, v. *fwaiika*. See Break.  
 Brook, n. *kamana* (tu-m.) *katontu*, *kankolo* (*tumikolo*).  
 Broom, n. *chisanku* (vi-s.).  
 Broth, n. *mulo* (*mito*).  
 Brother, n. *mkwasu* (a-k., also *mkwanu*, *mkwao*), *mlisa* (a-l.).  
 Brush, n. (for sweeping) *chisanku* (vi-s.). Use the brush (sweep), *pyela*.  
 Bubble, n. *posu* (ma-p.). v. *chitapo*, (as boiling water) *tapata*.  
 Bud, n. *liso* (*menso*).  
 Buffalo, n. *mboo* (—).  
 Bugle, n. *lipenga*.  
 Build, v. (as native house) *manga ng'anda*.  
 Bull, n. *ng'ombe ilume*.  
 Bullet, n. *chimbala* (vi-m.).  
 Bunch, n. *chilela* (vi-l.).  
 Bundle, n. (as of grass) *chipili* (vi-p.), (bale) *mtolo* (mi-t.).  
 Bungle, v. (make mistakes) *cheneka*, (do badly) *tondwa*.  
 Burden, n. (load) *chiya* (*viya*). Be a burden, *lema*.  
 Burglar, n. *nkungu* (—), *nyalufwimbi* (a-n.).  
 Burial, n. *maziko*.  
 Burn, v. nt. (as fire) *yaka*, (feel hot) *pya*. Act. (cause feeling of a burn) *yasha*, (set fire to) *shoka*.  
 Burrow, v. *kumba*.  
 Burst, v. act. *fwaya*, nt. *fwaiika*.  
 Bury, v. *ika pa msitu*, *zika*.  
 Bush, n. (jungle) *senga* (ma-s.), (thicket) *lusaka* (ma-l.).  
 Business, n. (ordinary) *umlimo*, (serious) *mlendu*, (trade) *usita*.  
 Bustle, v. *puvya*, *puvishya*.  
 Busy, a. He is busy, *milimo yakwote inyinji*.  
 But, conj. (commonly expressed by) *iai*, or, *nipo*.  
 Butterfly, n. *kasurusu* (tu-s.).  
 Butt, n. (of spear) *nkusa* (—), (of gun, &c.) *chitako* (vi-t.).

Buttock, n. *tako* (*ma-t.*).  
 Buy, v. *sita* (also, sell). What have you bought? *wasita tiani?*  
 Buy back, *ombola*, *nunula*.  
 By, ad. prep. (of agent or instrument) *na*, (near) *pafupi*.  
 By-way, n. *kaswaswaila* (*tu-s.*).  
 Cackle, v. *lila*.  
 Cage, n. *chinka* (*vi-n.*), (trap) *chumba* (*vi-u.*).  
 Calabash, n. (for drinking) *mbete* (—).  
 Calamity, n. *ntamu* (—), *malosa*.  
 Calculate, v. *penda*, *welenga*.  
 Calf, n. (animal) *litole* (*ma-t.*), *mwana ng'ombe*, (of leg) *kasambala* (*tu-r.*).  
 Calico, n. *nyula*.  
 Call, v. *ita*, *lalika*, (name) *tula* (*zina*).  
 Calm, a. Be calm (quiet), *fwuza*. Make calm (soothe), *puzhya*. Calm water, *mbomboza*.  
 Calumny, n. See Slander.  
 Camp, n. (place) *polala*, *popumula*, (huts) *misasa*.  
 Can, v. See *Be Able*.  
 Candle, n. *nyali* (also, lamp, &c.).  
 Canoe, n. *uwato* (*ma-w.*). Propel a canoe (with paddle) *yowa*, (with pole) *solola na msundu*.  
 Cap, n. *kofila* (—).  
 Capacity, n. (of mind) *nzelu*, (of character, body) *mpamvu*.  
 Capsize, v. nt. *vunukika*.  
 Captive, n. (in war) *nkole* (—).  
 Capture, v. *kata*, *manga*.  
 Caravan, n. *ulwendo* (*ma-l.*).  
 Carcass, n. (of dead animal) *ntumbi* (—).  
 Care, n. Take care of, *sunga*, (guard) *lindila*. Take care (be careful), *chita parwema*, *chitishya*, (of oneself) *lisunga*.  
 Cargo, n. *vyopakila*.  
 Carouse, n. (drunken revel) *ku-kolwa*.  
 Carrier, n. *mtwali* (*a-t.*).  
 Carrion, n. *ntumbi* (—).

Carry, v. *twala*. Carry on head, *twala pa mutu*. Carry off (as plunder), *poka*. Carry child on back, *fundu*.  
 Carve, v. *lemba*, *nyema*. Carving, *ndembo*, *vilembo*.  
 Case, n. (affair) *mlandu* (*mi-l.*), (covering) *chivunikilo* (*vi-v.*), (box) *bokosi* (*ma-b.*).  
 Cash, n. *ndalama*.  
 Cassava, n. *tute* (*a-t.*, plant and root).  
 Cast, (throw) *ponya*, *poza*.  
 Castor oil, n. (plant) *mono* (*mi-ono*), (oil) *mafuta a mono*.  
 Cat, n. *chona* (*a-chona*).  
 Catch, v. (seize) *kata*, (in trap) *tea*, (fish) *paya*, (with hook) *loola*, (a thing thrown) *nyanka*.  
 Caterpillar, n. *mpukwa* (—).  
 Cattle, n. *ng'ombe*. Cattle pen, *lua* (*ma-l.*).  
 Cause, n. *mlandu* (*mi-l.*). v. *chita*, *chishya* (i. e. *chitishya*).  
 Caution, n. See *Care*.  
 Cease, v. *sila*, *leka*.  
 Celebrated, n. *-a mbili*.  
 Cell, n. (in honey-comb) *liso* (*menso*).  
 Cemetery, n. *pozika*.  
 Centre, n. *pakati*.  
 Certain, a. (true) *-endi*. Know for certain, *ziwa chendi*.  
 Certify, v. *uzhya chendi*.  
 Chafe, v. (rub) *tula*, (irritate) *yasha*.  
 Chair, n. *chilimba* (*vi-l.*).  
 Chance, n. By chance (unintentionally), *palio lona*.  
 Change, v. (alter) *yaluka*, (act.) *yalushya*. Change position, (move) *wenjeleka*, (act.) *wenjeleshya*, *tembenusa*.  
 Be Changeable, v. *chita nzelu zinyinji*.  
 Channel, n. (torrent bed) *chisengu* (*vi-s.*), (drain, trench) *kakolo* (*tu-k.*).  
 Character, n. *mtima* (*mi-t.*).  
 Charge, v. See *Command*, *Accuse*, *Load*, &c. Put in charge, *ika pa chilindilo*.  
 Charm, n. (magic) *chitumwa*

- (*vi-l.*). v. (please) *temveshya*, (be-  
witch) *loa*.  
Chasm, n. *chisengu* (*vi-s.*).  
Chatter, v. *welweta*.  
Cheap, a. -a *mtengo utonto*.  
Cheat, v. *chencheneka*, *punsha*,  
*nyenga*.  
Check, v. *penga*, *panamika*.  
Cheek, n. *luovu* (*mbovu*).  
Cheer, v. (gladden) *sekeshya*, (en-  
courage) *usha mtima*. See **Applaud**.  
Be Cheerful, v. *seka*, *sekelela*.  
Chest, n. *chifua* (*vi-f.*). Chest  
complaint, *kulwala chifua*.  
Chew, v. *zhyeta*.  
Chicken, n. *kasioio* (*tu-s.*), *ka-  
nkuku* (*tu-n.*).  
Chief, n. *ufumu* (—).  
Chiefly, ad. *panyinji*.  
Chieftainship, n. *ufumu*.  
Child, n. *mwana mtonto* (*ana  
atonto*). See **Baby**, **Boy**, **Girl**.  
Child-birth, n. *kuwala mwana*.  
Childhood, n. *utonto*.  
Chin, n. *kayeko* (*tu-y.*).  
Choke, v. (stick in throat) *pata*,  
(throatle) *fina pa mkosi*.  
Choose, v. *sahula*.  
Chop, v. (pieces off) *ng'anula*.  
Circle, n. (in marking out hut)  
*mkokola* (*mi-k.*). Draw a circle (for  
hut), *chita* (*ng'anda*) *mkokola*.  
Be Circuitous, v. *vyongoloka*,  
*zunguluka*.  
Be Circular, v. *petana* (bent  
round).  
City, n. *munzi ukulu*.  
Civet Cat, n. *mfungo* (—).  
Claim, v. *simikishya*.  
Clap, v. (hands) *lamba*, *nyatana  
na ryanzanza*.  
Claw, n. (of bird, beast, &c.)  
*lunzhyala* (*n-sh.*). v. *tola*.  
Clay, n. *lito*.  
Clean, a. (white, pure) -*tua*. v.  
(make clean) *tuusha*, *tuulishya*,  
(with water, wash) *suka*, (of grain)  
*sokola*. Be (become clean), *tuuka*.  
See **Bright**, **White**, &c.  
Clear, a. (place) -*sweta*, (water)  
-*tua*, (evident) -*oneka*. A clear  
space (in forest), *chipalamba* (*vi-p.*)  
v. (ground, make a clearing) *teula*.  
Clever, a. -a *nze/lu*, -*ochenjela*.  
Climb, v. (up) *kwela*, (down)  
*seluka*.  
Cling to, v. *katishya*.  
Close, v. (as door) *zala*, (hole)  
*sinka*, *sinkishya*, (eyes) *zula*, (fist)  
*vunga*.  
Close, ad. *pafupi*, *ptonto*.  
Cloth, n. (of cotton) *nyula*, (of  
bark) *ng'anza*, (for carrying child  
on back) *monifundi*.  
Clothe, v. *wwala*, *vwazika*.  
Clothes, n. *nyula* (—, *ma n.*),  
(made up dress) *kamiza* (—).  
Cloud, n. *mkumbi* (*mi-k.*).  
Club, n. (knobbed stick) *nkole* (—).  
Clump, n. (of trees) *lusaka* (*ma-l.*).  
Cluster, n. *chilela* (*vi-l.*).  
Coax, v. *chenjeleka*.  
Cob, n. (of maize) *chitonga* (*vi-l.*).  
Cock, n. (male fowl) *kombwe*  
(*a-k.*).  
Coil, v. (fold) *vunga*. Be coiled  
up, *vungana*.  
Coin, n. *ndalama*.  
Cold, n. (wind) *mpepo*, *utontole*.  
It is cold, *kulutontolele*.  
Colic, n. (violent cutting pain in  
stomach) *vumo kutenda mala*.  
Collapse, v. (fall) *pona*, (be broken  
down) *booka*.  
Collar-bone, n. *kapilyepilye*  
(*tu-p.*).  
Collect, v. (act.) *pima*, *longa*,  
*longanishya*, *unganishya*, (nt.) *lan-  
gana*, *ungana*, (gather up, together)  
*sonka*, *sonkeshya*, (rubbish, &c.) *yola*,  
(rubber) *nyanka*.  
Collide, v. *konyana*.  
Colour, n. (colouring matter,  
marks) *mtoto* (*mi-t.*). See **Black**,  
**White**, **Red** (the only colours com-  
monly distinguished in Bantu).  
Comb, v. *sakula*. n. *chisakulo*  
(*vi-s.*). See **Honey**.  
Come, v. (*ku*)za. Ap. *zila*. Come!  
*iza* (-ni), *zoo* (-ni). Come to, *fwika*,  
*zila*. Come upon, *fwanga*, *komana*,  
(out) *fuma*, (in) *loa*, (down) *seluka*,

(back) *wela*. Come to pass, *pona*.  
 Come along! *tiye! tiyeni!*  
**Comfort**, v. (soothe) *pushya*,  
 (cheer) *usha mtima*.  
*Be Comfortable*, v. *wamika*.  
**Command**, v. *ushya*. n. *nzelu*  
 (—).  
**Commerce**, n. *usita, kusitana*.  
**Commit**, v. (entrust) *ika*, (do)  
*chita*.  
**Common**, a. (customary) -a *siku*  
*zhyonse, chisusu*, (shared by all) -a  
*wantu wonse*, (abundant) -nyinji,  
 (inferior) -ipa.  
**Companion**, n. *mnansi (a-n.)*,  
*mwiyanu* (i. e. my) (*a-y.*), *mwiyak*  
 (i. e. your), &c.  
**Compare**, v. *linganya, yeshyana*,  
*pambana*.  
*Feel Compassion for*, v. *mvana*  
*na*.  
**Compel**, v. (compulsion is ex-  
 pressed by causal form of verb).  
**Compensate**, v. *lipa, ombola*,  
*nunula*.  
**Compete**, v. *yeshyana*.  
**Complain**, v. *lilila, papatila*.  
**Complete**, a. *Be completed*  
 (finished), *sila, silila*. v. *sililishya*.  
**Complexion**, n. (face) *chinso*,  
 (colour) *mtoto*.  
**Compose**, v. (make, form) *chita*,  
 (soothe) *pushya*. *Be composed of*,  
*komana*.  
**Compress**, v. *fina*.  
**Compulsion**, n. *mpamvu* (force).  
*Be Concave*, v. *tumbana*.  
**Conceal**, v. *fisa*.  
**Conceit**, n. *chimeko, kumeka*.  
**Conceive**, v. (in mind) *lukana*,  
 (in womb) *tatika vumo*.  
**Conciliate**, v. *pushya, temwezhya*  
**Concord**, n. *kutenwana, mtima*  
*umo*.  
**Concubine**, n. *mziche (a-z.)*.  
**Condiment**, n. (relish of any  
 kind) *ndiwo* (—).  
**Condition**, n. (state, mode of  
 living) *mankalilo*.  
**Conduct**, n. *machitilo*. v. *twala*,  
*pelekezhya*, (show way) *sulula*.

**Confess**, v. *zumela, zumeleshya*.  
**Confuse**, v. *kanganizhya*. *Be*  
*confused, kanganizhiwa*.  
**Confute**, v. *kanya*, (out-argue)  
*wewya*.  
**Conquer**, v. *wewya*.  
**Conscience**, n. *mtima (mi-t.)*.  
*Be Conscious*, v. (*ku*)*wa na nzelu*,  
*mwawa*.  
**Consent**, v. *zumela, zumeleshya*.  
**Consider**, v. (think, reflect) *lu-*  
*kana*.  
**Consist of**, v. (be formed of)  
*komana*.  
**Console**, v. *pushya mtima*.  
**Conspiracy**, n. (plot) *nzelu* *Make*  
*a conspiracy, tatika nzelu*, (together)  
*chenchenekana*.  
**Constipation**, n. (of bowels)  
*vumo lya lutumba*.  
**Construct**, v. *chita*, (as house)  
*manga*.  
**Consult**, v. (ask advice) *lomba*  
*nzelu*, (form plan) *chitana nzelu*.  
**Consume**, v. (*ku*)*lya*.  
**Consumption**, n. (lung disease)  
*kulwala chifua*.  
*Be Contagious*, v. *ambukila*.  
**Contempt**, n. *Show contempt*,  
*pepula, seka*.  
*Be Content*, v. (contented) *kula*.  
**Contest**, n. *kuyeshyana, kulwana*.  
**Continual**, a. -a *siku zhyonse*,  
*-osasila*.  
**Continue**, v. (remain) *nkala*, (per-  
 severe in) *kata*.  
**Contract**, v. (form contract)  
*ushyana*, (grow less) *cheyya*.  
**Contradict**, v. *kanya*.  
*Be Contrary, Contradictory*, v.  
 (e. g. of statements) *lekana*.  
**Contrast**, v. (compare) *linganya*.  
*Be contrasted, lekana*.  
**Contribution**, n. *sonko (ma-s.)*.  
**Contribute**, v. *chita luso, tatika*  
*nzelu*.  
*Be Convenient*, v. *wamika*.  
**Conversation**, n. *makani*.  
**Converse**, v. *chitana makani*.  
**Convert**, v. (change) *yalushya*.  
*Be Convex*, v. *noka*.



- Convey**, v. *tuala*, *pelekeshya*.  
**Cook**, v. *pika*. See **Bake**, **Boil**,  
**Roast**, &c. Be (well) cooked, *pya*.  
**Cooking-pot**, n. *ntalu* (—). See  
**Vessel**.  
**Cool**, a. *otontole* (-a *utontole*),  
*-a mpepo*. Be (become) cool, *tontola*.  
**Copy**, v. *linga*.  
**Cord**, n. (bark strip) *luzisi* (*nzisi*),  
 (plaited fibre) *mwando* (*mi-a*).  
**Cork**, n. (plug for hole) *chosi-  
nkila*.  
**Corpse**, n. *mwili* (*mi-w*. body).  
**Correct**, v. *wanya*, *wamishya*.  
**Correspond**, v. (be like) *lingana*.  
*Be Corroded*, v. *lyeka*.  
**Cost**, n. (value) *mtengo*.  
**Cotton**, n. *ntonji*, (thread) *usalu*.  
**Cough**, n. *nkolotwa* (*ma-k*). v.  
*kosomola*.  
**Count**, v. *penda*, *welenga*.  
**Country**, n. *chalo* (*vyalo*). Senga  
 country, *Unsenga*.  
**Countryman**, n. (of same tribe)  
*mkoka* (*a-k*).  
*Be Courageous*, v. *kosa mtima*.  
**Court**, n. (courtyard) *lua* (*malua*).  
*Be Courteous to*, v. *lemekeshya*.  
**Cover**, v. (over) *vinikila*, (up,  
 with lid) *sanzika*.  
**Covering**, n. *chivunikilo* (*vi-v*).  
**Covet**, v. *kumbwa*.  
**Covetousness**, n. *tumbwili*, *kasu*,  
*kukumbwa chuma*.  
**Cow**, n. *ng'ombe ikazi*.  
**Coward**, n. *muyopa* (*a-y*).  
**Cowardice**, n. *uyopa*, *mweso*.  
**Crack**, n. *lung'a* (*ma-l*). v. (split)  
*pandula*.  
**Crafty**, a. *-ochenjela*.  
**Cram**, v. (fill full) *zuzhya*, (with  
 food) *kutishya*.  
**Crawl**, v. *tambalala*.  
**Crazy**, a. *-osilu* (-a *usilu*), *-liye  
nzelu*.  
**Create**, v. *chita*, *ponya*, *posa* (bring  
 to pass).  
*Be Credible*, v. *mwika*.  
**Creed**, n. *mwano*.  
**Creep**, v. *tambalala*.  
**Crest**, n. (of cock) *impolomombo*

(*ma-p*), (of guinea-fowl) *mumbu*  
 (*mi-z*).

**Crime**, n. *chintu chi-ipa* (*chiwi*,  
*cha chikiwi*).

*Be a Cripple*, v. *pintya*. He is a  
 cripple, *alupintye*.

**Crocodile**, n. *mwena* (—).

*Be Crooked*, v. *vyongoloka*.

**Cross**, v. (go across) *tauka*, (put  
 crosswise) *pilingishya*. Take a canoe  
 across a river, *taila uwato*.

*Be Cross*, v. *kaiipa*, *kalala*.

**Crossing**, n. (place) *potauka*.

**Cross-piece**, n. (of door, roof, &c.)  
*mwalo* (*mi-w*).

**Cross Roads**, n. *mpandwa* (*mi-p*).

**Crouch**, v. *lipeta*, *elama*.

**Crow**, v. (as cock) *lila*.

**Crowbar**, n. (pointed stake) *chi-  
nsopwe* (*vi-n*).

**Crowd**, n. *mulongo* (*mi-l*).

**Cruel**, a. *-a nkanza*, *-liye matu*,  
*-a mtima umo*, *-kali*.

**Cruelty**, n. *nkanza*, *ukali*.

**Crush**, v. *penda*, (with teeth)  
*zhyeta*.

**Cry**, v. *lila*, (loudly) *lilishya*. n.  
*lizu* (*ma-l*), (trilling scream) *ntu-  
ngulu*.

**Cultivate**, v. *lima*.

**Cunning**, a. *-ochenjela*, *-a maluso*.

**Cup**, n. (native, gourd) *ntumo* (—),  
 (foreign) *kopo*. Make a cup, *sembela  
ntumo*. v. (bleed) *lumika*.

**Cupping Horn**, n. *msuku* (*mi-s*).

**Cure**, v. (disease) *pozhya*. Be  
 cured, *folo*.

**Curious**, a. (striking, remarkable)  
*-okanganya*.

**Curly**, v. *peta*, *vunga*.

**Curse**, n. *njazi* (—).

**Custom**, n. *chisusu* (*vi-s*).

**Cut**, v. (by blow or pressing) *tenda*,  
 (by drawing) *nyema*. Different kinds  
 of cutting are, (trees) *tenda*, (fire-  
 wood) *tema*, *chenchena*, (grass) *sewa*,  
 (hair) *sesa*, (patterns) *metelala*, (a  
 mark) *lemba*, (shave) *meta*, (bark  
 thongs) *tema*.

**Cut-water**, n. (of canoe) *mitu*  
 (*mitu*).

- Daily, ad. *siku zhyonse*.
- Damage, v. *ifya, lasa*.
- Dance, n. *chila (vila)*. v. *vina*.
- Dangerous, a. *-olusa*. Be dangerous, *lusa*. It is a dangerous place, *polusa apo, paluluse*.
- Dark, a. *-fipa*. Get dark, *fipa*.
- Make dark, darken, *fipishya*.
- Darkness, n. *ufipa, mfinzi*.
- Daub, v. (a house with mud) *mata (ng'ania lito)*.
- Daughter, n. *mwana mkazi*.
- Dawdle, v. *muka*.
- Dawn, n. *kucha*, (early) *matemwa kucha*. It is dawn, *kwacha*.
- Day, n. period of twenty-four hours, *siku* (—), also *nsiku*; period of daylight, *sua (mazua)*, also *kazua*, a day. Per day, one day, each day, *sua limo*. Every day, *mazua onse*. All day, *sua lyonse, kazua konse*. That same (very) day, *sua liamene lyila*. A day and a night, *kazua nosiku* (i.e. *na usiku*). On what day? *sua lya kuni? sua lini?* What time of day? *sua tiani?*
- Daze, v. *kangishya*.
- Dead, a. *-a kufwa*. He is just dead, *afwa*. He has been some time dead, *alufwile*.
- Deadly, a. *-opaya, -ofwishya*. Inflict a deadly wound, *lasa pa moyo*.
- Be Deaf, v. *tulika matu*.
- Dear, a. (beloved) *-otemweka*, (costly) *-a mtengo ukulu*.
- Death, n. *lufwo (ma-l)*.
- Debate, n. *mlandu (mi-l)*. v. *chita mlandu*.
- Debt, n. *mangawa* (—).
- Debtor, n. *-na mangawa*.
- Decay, v. *ola*.
- Deceive, v. *chencheneka, nyenga*.
- Decide, v. (settle dispute) *tenda*, *pambula (mlandu)*, (resolve) *kata nzelu*.
- Declare, v. *nena, uzhya*.
- Decorate, v. *samika, wamishya*. Be decorated, *sama*, (dressed up) *vwalila*.
- Decrease, v. *chepa*, (act.) *cheshya*.
- Deed, n. *mchitilo (ma ch)*.
- Deep, a. *-tali, -a kuya pansi*.
- Defeat, v. *werya, tetezhya, utusha*.
- Defend, v. *sunga, lindilila*.
- Defile, v. *chitila lusa*.
- Defraud, v. (steal) *punsha*, (deceive) *chencheneka*.
- Deity, n. *Leza*.
- Delay, v. (loiter) *muka*, (act.) *mukizhya*.
- Deliver, v. (safe) *pulumuzhya, puzumuzhya*.
- Deliverance, n. *kupulumuka*.
- Demolish, v. (a building, &c.) *boosha*.
- Deny, v. *kana, kanila*.
- Depart, v. *yenda, pila, ima, luta*, (*ku*)*ya*.
- Dependant, n. *mulumbwana* (*a-l*).
- Deposit, v. *ika*.
- Deprive, v. *twalila, poka*.
- Depth, n. *mutali*.
- Derision, n. *sungo, kupepula*.
- Descend, v. *seluka, pona*.
- Desert, n. (bare open country) *paswela*, (uninhabited wilderness) *chisanga (vi-s)*.
- Desolate, a. (solitary) *-eka*, (destitute) *-okululuka*. A desolate uninhabited place, *paliye wantu*.
- Despise, v. (ridicule) *pepula, seka*.
- Destitute, a. *okululuka, mpawi* (*a-p*).
- Destroy, v. *ifya*. Ps. *ifwa*. (kill) *paya*, (break down) *boosha*.
- Destruction, n. *kuisfya, kupaya, kubooka*.
- Deter, v. *fengerzhya*, (by fear) *yofishya*.
- Detest, v. *ipila, ipilishya*.
- Devastate, v. *ifya*.
- Be Devoted to, v. *katishya, chitishya*.
- Devour, v. (*ku*)*lya*.
- Dew, n. *mame*.
- Have Diarrhoea, v. *tulula mala, kunyelezhya mala*. Diarrhoea, *vumo lya hunsindi*.
- Die, v. *kufwa, sila moyo*.
- Differ, v. (from each other) *lekana, siana*. See Agree.

Different, a. (of another kind) *-mbi*, (another of same kind) *-iyakwe*, (unique) *-eka*.

Be Difficult, v. (laborious) *lema*, (too much for) *wewya*, (tiring) *wufya*.

Difficulty, n. (obstacle) *karwindi* (*tu-w.*), (problem) *mlandu* (*mi-l.*).

Dig, v. (with hoe, &c.) *lima*, (a hole) *kumba*. Dig for water, *kumba manzi*.

Diligence, n. *mpamvu*.

Be Diligent, v. *chita mpamvu*, *katichya*.

Diminish, v. (grow less) *chepa*, (make less) *chefya*.

Dip, v. (put in water) *wiika*.

Directly, ad. (at once) *lomba pano*.

Dirt n. (filth) *lusa*, (mud) *matika*.

Dirty, a. *-a lusa*.

Disaster, n. *ntamu* (—), *malosa*.

Discharge, v. *fumya*, (cargo) *samizhya*.

Be Discontented, v. *lilila papatila*.

Discover, v. *ona*, *lola*, (come upon) *fwanga*, *komana*.

Discuss, v. *chita mlandu*, *lawila mlandu*, *chitana mlandu*.

Discussion, n. *mlandu* (*mi-l.*).

Disease, n. *ntenda* (—), *ulwole* (*ma-l.*).

Disembowel, v. *tumbulula*, *fumya mala*.

Disgrace, n. (shame) *nsoni*.

Disguise, v. (alter) *yalushya*, (hide) *fisa*, (oneself as) *lichita ngati*.

Dish, n. *nyampale* (—), *chirwale* (*vi-w.*). See Vessel.

Dislike, v. See Like, v.

Dismiss, v. *fumya*, *fumizhya*.

Disobedience, n. *mwano*.

Disobey, v. *chita mwano*.

Disparage, v. *pepula*.

Disperse, v. (drive away) *utusha*, (scatter) *mwazhya*.

Displease, v. (offend) *kalipizhya*.

Dispute, v. See Discuss.

Be Disrespectful, v. *pelula*, *seka*, *chita zungo*.

Distance, n. *mulali*.

Distant, a. *-tali*, (very far off) *-a kutali*.

Distress, n. (hardships) *ntamu*, (grief) *kulila*, *kukwinyinyika*, *kusi-ngwa*.

Distribute, v. *yawa*, *yawanya*.

District, n. *chalo* (*zyalo*).

Disturbance, n. (quarrelling) *mulomo*, *mlandu*.

Ditch, n. *kakolo* (*tu-k.*).

Dive, v. *bila*.

Divide, v. (in portions) *yawa*, *yawanya*, (cut in two, cut up) *tenda*, *nyema*.

Do, v. (act) *chita*, (suffice) *kusha*. Do work well, *wanya kuchita mulimo*. How do you do? *Munkala paweme?*

Docile, a. *-omvwila* (i. e. *-a kumvwila*).

Doctor, n. *nganga* (—), *ma mankwala*.

Dog, n. *mbwa* (—).

Domesticate, v. *teka*.

Door, n. *chisasa* (*vi-s.*). Door post, *upitingo* (*ma-p.*). Door prop (to secure), *mulimbo* (*mi-l.*). Shut door, *zala chisasa*. Open door, *zula chisasa*.

Doorway, n. *mlyango* (*mi-l.*).

Double, a. *-a kawili*.

Doubt, *Be in Doubt*, v. *kaiika*.

Down, ad. *pansi*, *kunyansi*.

Be Downcast, v. (in look) *chita usini*.

Doze, v. *sinzinila*.

Drag, v. *kula*.

Drain, n. (ditch) *kakolo* (*tu-k.*).

Draw, v. (drag) *kula*, (cause to pass) *pitizhya*, (depict) *linga*. Draw water, *tapa manzi*. Draw a bow, *fwewa uta*. Draw (mark out), *lemba*. Draw apart, *manulula*.

Be Dreadful, v. *yofizhya*.

Dream, v. *lola*, *lola tulo*.

Dress, n. *nyulo*, (made up) *ka-miza*. v. *vwala*, *pitchila*, (act.) *vwalika*. Wear fine dress, be dressed up, *vwalila*, *sama*, *lisamika*.

Drink, v. *mwa*. Something to drink, *chakumwa*.

Be Drinkable, v. (fit to drink) *mweka*.  
 Drinking place, n. *pomwela*.  
 Drive, v. *yendeshya*. Drive away, *utusha*.  
 Drop, v. (fall) *pona*, (act.) *poza*.  
 Drought, n. *njota*, *posila manzi onse*.  
 Drown, v. *bishya*. Be drowned, *bila*.  
 Be Drowsy, v. *sinzinila*.  
 Drugs, n. *mankwala*.  
 Drum, n. *ng'oma* (—).  
 Get Drunk, v. *kolwa*. He is drunk, *alukokwe*.  
 Drunkard, n. *mkolwa (a-k.)*.  
 Dry, a. -*umo*. Dry season, *chisalo*.  
 Dry land, *silya*. Become dry, *uma*.  
 Make dry, *umizhya*. Dry up (as river), *pwa*, *pwilila*, (as plant) *uma*.  
 Dry clothes, &c. in sun, *yanika*.  
 Dumb, a. A dumb person, *silawila (a-s.)*.  
 Dung, n. *tuvi (ma-t.)*.  
 During, prp. *nyengo ya, -umo* (with verb).  
 Be Dusk, v. *fifa*.  
 Dust, n. *lukungu*.  
 Duty, n. (task) *mulimo (mi-l.)*.  
 It is one's duty, *ni viweme*.  
 Dwarf, n. *kamuntu (tuantu)*, *mutu mfupi ngaye*.  
 Dwelling, n. (place) *ponkala*, (house) *ng'anda*.  
 Dye, n. (colouring matter) *mloto (mi-t.)*.  
 Dysentery, n. *maia kafuma mlopa*.  
 Each, a. (and all) *-onse*, (singly) *-mo -mo*.  
 Ear, n. (of body) *kwatu (matu)*, (of maize) *chilonga (vi-t.)*.  
 Early, ad. *mawa*, (very early) *mana mpepo*.  
 Earth, n. (soil) *lito*. Rich soil, *lito liweme*. (World) *chalo (vyalo)*.  
 Earthenware, a. -*a lito*.  
 Earthwork, n. *linga lya lito*.  
 Easily, ad. (with ease) *pafepo*.  
 Easy, a. -*a pepo*.

Eat, v. *lya*. Nt. *lyeka*. Ps. *lyerwa*.  
 Ap. *lyela*.  
 Eatable, a. Eatable stuff, *chilyo (vi-l.)*. Be eatable, *lyeka*.  
 Echo, n. *manvwila*.  
 Edge, n. (of vessel, river, &c.) *mbali* (—), (of tool) *ulumate*.  
 Educate, v. *lela*.  
 Make an Effort, v. *yeshya*.  
 Egg, n. *lisumbi (ma-s.)*.  
 Eggshell, n. *chikokomwa (vi-k.)*.  
 Eight, a. -*sano na -tatu*.  
 Either, conj. Either—*or*, *pambine* —*pambine*. I do not want this or that, *ichi na ichi tenupangwa, tai*.  
 Be Elastic, v. *nyuntika*. Draw out an elastic substance, *nyuntila*.  
 Elbow, n. *kakonyokonyo (tu-k.)*.  
 Elder, a. -*kulu*.  
 Elegance, n. *kuwama*.  
 Elephant, n. *naovu* (—).  
 Eleven, a. *kumi na -mo*.  
 Be Eloquent, v. *chita kuwamya kunena*.  
 Elsewhere, ad. *pambi, payakwe*.  
 Be Emaciated, v. *nyala*.  
 Emancipate, v. *pehya ufumu*.  
 Embark, v. (go on board) *pakila, lowa*.  
 Ember, n. *mnyeku (vi-mn.)*.  
 Embrace, v. *kata, kumatila*.  
 Emetic, n. *mankwala olukishya*.  
 Emigrate, v. *sia kwao, nyela*.  
 Employ, v. *tuma, tumizhya*.  
 Employment, n. *mulimo (mi-l.)*, *utume*.  
 Empty, a. -*a tiala*, *mlio chintu*.  
 Emulation, n. *kuyezhyana*.  
 Encamp, v. *pumula, lala, swa*.  
 Encampment, n. (place) *polala*, (huts) *misasa*.  
 Enclose, v. *zungulushya*, (with fence) *nsito*, (with stockade), *linga*.  
 Enclosure, n. *lua (malua)*.  
 Encourage, v. *usha mtima*.  
 Encroach on, v. (*ku*)*lya* (eat).  
 End, v. *sila*, (act.) *silishya, silishya*. n. *posila*, (limit) *mpaka (mi-p.)*, (tip, point) *chinsoprwe (vi-n.)*.  
 Endanger, v. *ika polusa, lusi-zhya*.

- Endeavour**, v. *yezhya*.  
**Endure**, v. (bear) *pila*, (persevere) *katizhya*, (last) *nkala*.  
**Enemy**, n. *kapondo* (*tu-p.*).  
**Energy**, n. *mpamvu*. Do with energy, *chitizhya*, *katizhya kuchita*.  
**Engage**, v. (employ) *tumizhya*, (undertake) *zumela*. Be engaged in, *chita*. Enter into an engagement, *uzhyana*.  
**Enjoy**, v. *pangwa*, *temwa*, *sekela*.  
**Enjoyment**, n. *kuseka*, *kusangala*, *kuyangala*.  
**Enlarge**, v. *kuzhya*, *yangizhya*.  
**Enlighten**, v. *uzhya maluso*.  
**Enmity**, n. *upondo*.  
**Be Enough**, v. *kusha*.  
**Enquire**, v. *konsha*.  
**Enrage**, v. *kalipizhya*, *kululusha*.  
**Enter**, v. *lowa*.  
**Entertain**, v. (as guest) *pokelela*, *penga*, *sekela*, (please) *sekezhya*, *wamila*.  
**Entice**, v. (call) *ita*, (cause desire) *kumbwizhya*, (decoy) *chenjeleka*.  
**Entrails**, n. *mala*.  
**Entrance**, n. *polowa*, *mlyango* (*mi-l.*).  
**Entreat**, v. *lomba*, *lambila*.  
**Entrust**, v. *ika*, *ikizhya*.  
**Envy**, n. *ukwa* (*ma-u.*). Feel envy, (*ku*)*wa na ukwa mtima*.  
**Equal**, a. *-olingana*, *chimwana chimo*, *-mo*. Make (or consider) equal, *linganya*.  
**Erect**, a. *-peneme*.  
**Err**, v. *cheneka*.  
**Escape**, v. *pulumuka*, *puzumuka*, (run off) *utuka*. Way of escape, *njia youtukula*.  
**Especially**, ad. *chendi*.  
**Estate**, n. (landed) *minda*.  
**Eternal**, a. *osasila*, *osafawa*.  
**European**, n. *Mzungu* (*a-s.*).  
**Be Even**, v. *lungana*, *lingana*.  
**Evening**, n. *chingulo*. In the evening, *mchingulo*.  
**Ever**, ad. For ever, *vilimika ntevusila* (years without end).  
**Every**, a. *-onse*. Everybody, *muntu onse*, *wantu wense*. Every-where, *ponse*.  
**Evidence**, n. (of eyewitness) *ukamenso*.  
**Be Evident**, v. *oneka*.  
**Evil**, a. *-ifa*, *-wi*, *-a chitwi*, *-osali*. Evil temper (character), *usali*, *mtima wosali*, *mtima nguwu*. n. *nipa*.  
**Exactly**, ad. *chendi*, *ngako*.  
**Examine**, v. *loleshya*.  
**Exceed**, **Excel**, v. *pula*, *pita*.  
**See More**.  
**Except**, conj. (expressed by using) *iai*. All except two, *onse*, *awili iai*.  
**Exchange**, v. *sintuzhyana*, (bar-ter) *sita*, *sitana*.  
**Excite**, v. *usha moyo*, *kalipizhya*.  
**Exclaim**, v. *lawilizhya*, *lila*.  
**Excrement**, n. *tuvi* (*ma-t.*), *katuvi*.  
**Pass excreta**, *nya*.  
**Exert oneself**, v. *yezhya*.  
**Exhaust**, v. *wewya*, *enyfya*. Be exhausted, *wewa*, *wupa*, *fontola mwivo*.  
**Expand**, v. *kula*, (act.) *kuzhya*.  
**Expedition**, n. *utwendo* (*ma-l.*).  
**Expense**, n. *mtengo*.  
**Expensive**, a. *-a mtengo ukulu*.  
**Experience**, n. (expertness) *umisili*, (practical knowledge) *maluso*.  
**Explain**, v. *uzhya nzeli*, *folokosa*.  
**Expose**, v. (to view) *onezhya*, *ika pasweta*.  
**Extend**, n. (enlarge) *kuzhya*, *yangizhya*.  
**Extinguish**, v. *zimya*, *tima*.  
**Be Extravagant**, v. *mwozhyo chuma*, *taya mpango*.  
**Extricate**, v. *tambulula*, *mangulula*, *fumizhya*.  
**Exude**, v. (*ku*)*vwa*, *fuma*.  
**Exult**, v. *yanga*, *yangala*.  
**Eye**, n. *liso* (*menio*). **Eyelid**, *chikope* (*vi-k.*). **Eyelash**, *nkope* (*-*).  
**Eyewitness**, n. *kamenso* (*a-k.*).  
**Face**, n. *chinso* (*vinso*). Lie on the face, *lala ndoo*. v. (be in front of) *nkala kumenso*.  
**Fail**, v. (be deficient, lacking) *sowa*, *chepa*, (not to succeed) *shama*, *kangwa*, *wewa*, (be unable) *kanga*.

Fair, a. (just) -*olingana*, (good, beautiful) -*weme*.

Faith, n. *mwawano*. Have faith in, *mwila*.

Faithful, a. -*endi*.

Fall, v. *pona* (Cs. *poneshya*, *ponya*, *pona*. Ap. *ponela*), *wa* (Ap. *wila*. Cs. *wishya*), (down a slope) *kulumuka*, *seluka*, (of leaves) *yoyoka*, (of water) *tenena*. Fall on (to the lot of), *ponela*. Fall into a hole, *tulika*, *tulikishya*.

False, a. -*a wenyi*. See Lie, n.

Fame, n. *mbili*. Of fame (famous, famed), -*a mbili*.

Famine, n. *njala*, *kuchepa chakuya*.

Far, ad. *kutali*.

Bid Farewell, v. *laila*, *lailana*. (Common forms are, (to one going) *pitani* (or, *muyende*) *parweme*; (to one remaining) *salani* (or, *munkale parweme*.)

Farther, ad. (far) *kutali*, (forward) *pantanzi*.

Fast, a. -*opiweya*. Do fast, *puruya kuchita*, *chitishya* (and so the Cs. with other verbs).

Fasten, v. (by binding) *manga*, (by fixing) *katishya*, *panikishya*.

Be Fat, v. *ina*, *nona*. Make fat, *faiten*, *inishya*.

Fat, n. *mafuta*.

Father, n. *wata*, *awisi*. My father, *wata wangu*, *wata neo*, (real) *wata eniyala*. Your father, *auso* (i. e. *awisi wako*).

Fathom, n. (of cloth) *mukwamba* (*mi-k*).

Fatigue, v. See Exhaust.

Fault, n. (wrongdoing) *uipa*, *kuifya*. See Error, Mistake.

Favour, n. (kind treatment) *shuko*. Confer favour, *shukishya*. Receive favour, *shuka*.

Fear, v. *yopa*. n. *uwawa*, *mwezo*.

Feast, n. *vyakulya vinyinji*, (drunken) *kukotwa*.

Feather, n. *ng'ala* (*ma n*).

Be Feeble, v. *tontola*.

Feed, v. *lyezhya*, *chishya*.

Feel, v. (have a feeling, sensation)

*mrwa*, (with fingers) *tonfya*.

Fellow, n. (of same kind, occupation, &c.) -*yakwe* (-*yangu*, -*yako*, &c.), (of same tribe) *mkoka* (*a-k*), (of same town) *mune kwasu* (*kwanu*, *kwao*, pl. *ane k*).

Female, a. -*kasi*, -*anakasi*.

Fence, n. *nsito* (—), (round a house) *cheche* (*ma-ch*), (stockade) *linga* (*ma-l*). v. *zunguluzhya*, *nsito*, &c.

Ferment, v. *wila*, (act.) *wilishya*.

Fertile, a. -*otwala*.

Be at Feud, v. *chitana upondo*.

Be Feverish, v. (be hot, have fever) *nyeka*, (*ku*)*wa -fuu*, (*ku*)*wa chiwe*. He feels feverish, *mwili uti mfuu*.

Few, a. -*tonto*, *te -nyinji*.

Fibre, n. *luzizi* (*nzizi*).

Field, n. *munda* (*minda*).

Fierce, a. -*kali*, -*a nkansa*.

Fierceness, n. *ukali*, *nkansa*.

Fight, v. *lwa*, *nyatana*, (make war) *chita nkondo*.

Figure, n. (shape) *mtundu* (*mi-t*), *msinku* (*mi-s*), (drawn, written) *chilembo* (*vi-l*).

File, v. *tuula*.

Fill, v. *zushya*, (with food) *kusha*.

Filter, v. *vwa*, (act.) *zwishya*. n. (strainer) *lusanso* (*ma-l*).

Filth, n. *lusa*.

Fin, n. *chipefi* (*vi-p*).

Final, a. (last) -*a kuvuli*, (finishing) -*osila*, (remaining) -*osala*. Finally, *posila*, *posala*.

Find, v. (a thing lost) *ona*, *tola*, (a new thing) *fwanga*, *komana*.

Fine, a. -*weme*. It is fine today, *kuwama lelo*.

Finery, n. *chimeko* (*vi-m*). Wear finery, *vwalila*, *meka*, *lisama*.

Finger, n. *murwe* (*minwe*). v. *tonfya*.

Finish, v. (be finished) *sila*, (quite) *silitila*, (get finished) *silishya*, *silitishya*.

Fire, n. *mulilo* (*mi-l*). Make a fire, *kozhya mulilo*. Light a fire,

*yasha mulilo*. Apply fire to (as in cooking), *yocha*. Set fire to, *shoka*. Be on fire, *pya*. See Burn. Fire a gun, *lishya futi*. By the fire, *kuziko, kumulilo*. Sit by a fire, *yota mulilo*.

**Firebrand**, n. *mwenji* (mi-e.).

**Fireplace**, n. *ziko* (ma-z.), (formed of three small heaps of earth) *fua* (ma-f.).

**Firewood**, n. *nkuni*. Cut firewood, *chenchena nkuni, tema nkuni*.

**Firm**, a. (hard) *-umo*, (strong) *-okosa*. Be firm, (tight) *katishya*, (fixed) *panikiwa*.

**Be First**, v. (begin) *tatika*, (lead) *tangila*.

**First**, a. *-otatika, -otangila*. At first, firstly, *potatika, potangila*.

**Fish**, n. *sawi* (ma-s.). v. *paya masawi*, (with hook, angle) *loola*.

**Fisherman**, n. *mpayi* (a-p.), *masawi*.

**Fish-hook**, n. *uloo* (ma-u.).

**Fish-trap**, n. *chanza* (zy-a.), *mtuo* (mi-t.).

**Fist**, n. *nkenyo* (—). Close the fist, *vunga nkenyo*.

**Fit**, v. *lingana*, (to) *linganila*. Make fit, *linganishya, wamishya*.

Be fit for, *linganila, wamila*. Fit up (as a house, &c.), *samika*.

**Five**, a. *-sano*. Five times, *kasano*.

**Fix**, v. *panika, katishya*, (tie) *manga*.

**Flame**, n. *mulilo, lulime* (ma-lul.) *twa mulilo*.

**Flank**, n. (groin) *uluunda* (ma-l.) *manga*, v. (wings) *pupula*.

**Flat**, a. Be flat, *lingana, lungama*, (made flat, with flat side) *pampantala*, (of country) *seyama*. The flat (broad) side of a thing (knife, board, &c.), *mupampantali*. Make flat, *lungamishya*.

**Flay**, v. *fundula*.

**Flesh**, n. *nyama*.

**Be Flexible**, v. *tefuka*.

**Flight**, n. (of bird) *kundalala*, (running away) *kutuka*.

**Fling**, v. *posa*.

**Float**, v. *nyaya*.

**Flock**, n. *mulongo* (mi-l.).

**Flog**, v. *nyaya, nyatishya*.

**Flood**, n. Be in flood, *seuka*.

**Floor**, n. *pansi*.

**Flour**, n. *unga*.

**Flow**, v. *pita*.

**Flower**, n. *lua* (malua). v. *tumba malua*.

**Flutter**, v. *pupula*.

**Fly**, v. (as bird) *ndalala*, (run away) *utuka*. n. *inzi* (—). Tsetse fly, *kamsembe* (tu-m.).

**Foam**, n. *posu, mapofu*.

**Fog**, n. *fulule*.

**Fold**, v. *vunga*.

**Follow**, v. *konka, konkana na*, (obey, attend to) *mzwila, sunga*. Follow advice, *sunga nzulu*.

**Follower**, n. (dependant) *mlumbwana* (a-l.).

**Folly**, n. *upusa, mapusa*.

**Be Fond of**, v. *temwa, pangwa*.

**Footprint, Footstep**, n. *ulwayo* (ma-l.).

**For**, prp. conj. Because (of), on account (of), by reason (of), *mlandu* (wa).

**Forbid**, v. *kanishya*.

**Force**, n. *mpamvu, makosa*. v. Force to do, *chitishya na mpamvu*.

**Ford**, n. (crossing-place) *potauka*. v. *tauka*.

**Forehead**, n. *mpumi* (—).

**Foreign**, a. *-a kuzi*. A foreigner, *mukuzi* (a-k.).

**Forest**, n. *sanga* (—), *chisanga* (vi-).

**Forge**, v. (of metals) *fula*.

**Forget**, v. *luwa*. Cs. *luukhya*. Be forgetful, *chitoluwa*.

**Forgive**, v. *lekela, lekezhya, lezhya*.

**Fork**, n. (of tree) *mpanda* (mi-p.), (of road) *mpandwa* (mi-p.), *mampindawe*, (instrument) *chisakulo* (vi-s., i.e. comb).

**Form**, v. (make, cause to be) *chita, ponya, posa*, (constitute, be material of) *komana*. n. *mtundu* (mi-t.).

Former, a. -a *kale*, -*olatika*.  
 Fornication, n. *ukachenche*, *upobo*. Commit f., *chita uk*.  
 Forsake, v. *sia*, *leka*.  
 Fortification, n. (stockade) *linga* (*ma-l*).  
 Be Fortunate, v. *shuka*.  
 Fortune, n. *Leza* (God). Good fortune, *shuko*. Bad fortune, *shamo*.  
 Forward, ad. *pantanzi*.  
 Foul, a. -a *lusa*, -*osali* (i.e. -a *us*).  
 Fowl, n. *nkuku* (—).  
 Free, a. -a *ufumu*. A free person (not a slave), *nfumu*. A free gift, *chintu cha wanzi*, or, *cha tiala*. Make (set) free, *peshya ufumu*. Freely (generously), *panyinji*, (gratis) *tiala*.  
 Freedom, n. (condition) *ufumu*.  
 Frequent, a. See Often.  
 Fresh, a. (not stale) -*wisi*, (recent) -a *lomba*, -a *pano*, (another) -*yakwe* (-*yao*, &c.).  
 Friend, n. *chyuza* (*vyuza*), *mnansi* (*a-n*), (acquaintance) *mwiyanu* (*a-y*, i.e. my, -*yako*, i.e. your, and so on). Make friends, *chita uchyuza*.  
 Friendship, n. *uchyuzua*.  
 Frighten, v. *yofya*, *sizimushya*, *telemeshya*, (severely) *mangizhya* (*ntima*, *kanganizhya*).  
 Frog, n. *chule* (*a-ch*).  
 From, prp. *ku*, *kufuma*.  
 Front, n. In front, *pantanzi*, *kumenso*. Go in front, go to the front, *tangila*, *tanga*, *yenda pantanzi*. Space in front of house, *luanza* (*mbanza*).  
 Frown, n. *nsini*. v. *chita nsini*.  
 Fruit, n. *vyotwala* (i.e. *vya kut*).  
 Bear fruit, be fruitful, *twala*. See Produce, Bear.  
 Fruitless, -a *tiala*.  
 Fry, v. *kansinga*.  
 Fuel, n. (firewood) *nkuni*.  
 Be Full, v. *vula*. Cs. *suzhya* (fill); (have enough) *kuta*.  
 Fullgrown, a. -*kulu*.  
 Fun, n. *kuseka*, *masowelo*, *upusa*.  
 Funeral, n. *maziko*.  
 Fur, n. *masako*.

Be Furious, v. *kalipizhya*, *kalala chendi*, *chita nkanza*.

Furniture, n. (fittings, decorations) *masamiko*.

Future, a. -a *kusa*. Future time, *nyengo ya kuza*, or, *ya pantanzi*.

Gain, v. (get) *tatika*. (make profit) *shuka*. n. *shuko* (*ma-s*).

Gale, n. *chinkuka* (*vi-n*).

Game, n. (play) *sowelo* (*ma-s*), (animals) *nyama*.

Garden, n. *chipoka* (*vi-p*), *munda* (*minda*).

Gather, v. (collect, generally) *pima*, (as contributions, tax, &c.) *sonka*, *sonkeshya*, (as grass, rubbish, &c.) *tola*, *yola*, (as fruit) *chela*, (rice) *pulula*. Cause to assemble, *unganishya*, *longanishya*; nt. *ungana*, *longana*. See Collect.

General, a. -a *konse*, -a *wantu onse*.

Gentle, a. -*weme*. Gently, *pa-weme*.

Genuine, a. -a *chendi*, -*endi*, *nga*.  
 Gesticulate, v. *cheuzhya*.

Get, v. *tatika*, (procure) *ula*, (be given) *pewa*. Get (stand) up, *ima*, *panama*, (from sleep) *uka*, (early) *chelela*.

Ghost, n. *chisingwa* (*vi n*), *chimwili-mwili* (*vi-m*).

Giant, n. *chimuntu* (*viantu*), *muntu mulalimpa*.

Giddiness, n. *chirengulile*.

Be Giddy, v. *zengulila mutu*.

Giraffe, n. *lumbanungu* (*a-l*).

Girl, n. (not boy) *mwana mkazi*, (child) *mbuntu* (*a-b*), (small) *kabuntu* (*a-k*), marriageable, *msimbi* (*a-s*).

Give, v. *pa* (Ap. *pela*). Cs. *peshya*. Ps. *pewa*, *peshya*.

Be Glad, v. *seka*, *sekelela*, *yangala*, *sangalala*. See Joyful, Happy.

Glass, n. *chilola* (*vi-l*).

Glutton, n. *muuke* (*mi-uke*).

Be Gluttonous, v. *likutizhya*, *lyesha*.

Gnaw, v. *kangaza*.



- Go, v. *ya, yenda, pita, luta*, (set off) *ima*. Go to (from, away, &c.), *yila*. Go! *nkoya (-ni)*! Go out, *fuma*, (as candle) *zima*. Go in. *lowa*. Be going to, *saka*. Go on doing, *kata, katishya*.
- Goat, n. *mbuzi (-)*.
- God, n. *Leza* (also, sky, thunder).
- Good, a. *-weme, -owama*, (genuine, real) *-endi, nga-*. Be good for, *wamila, wamishya*. Good! that is good (well-done)! *paweme, vivweme!*
- Bid Good-bye, v. *laila, lailana*. (A common form is, *musale paweme, pitani paweme.*)
- Good-for-nothing, a. *-a tiala*.
- Good Fortune, Good Luck, n. *shuko (ma-)*.
- Goodness, n. (good temper, kindness, &c.) *uweme*.
- Goods, *chuma (vi-uma)*, *mpango*, (for sale) *vyosita*.
- Gossip, n. *makani*. v. *chita makani*.
- Gourd, n. (for drinking) *mbete (-)*.
- Govern, v. (be king) *(ku)wawa nfumu*, (administer) *wamishya*.
- Gradually, ad. *patonto patonto*.
- Grain, n. (cleaned) *nsembe*. See Rice, Millet.
- Granary, n. *ntumba (-)*.
- Grandchild, n. *msikulu (a-s.)*.
- Grand-parent, *asikulu (-)*.
- Grapple, v. *katana, lwa*.
- Grasp, v. *kata, katishya*.
- Grass, n. *uzu (-, viuzu, mauzu)*.
- Cut grass, *sewa usu*.
- Grate, v. (rub small) *tuula*.
- Be Grateful, v. *yamika* (Ap. *yamikila*).
- Gratis, ad. *tiala*.
- Grave, n. *msitu (mi-s.)*.
- Gravel, n. See Stone.
- Gravy, n. *muto (mito)*.
- Grease, n. *mafuta*.
- Great, a. *-kulu*.
- Be Greedy, v. *lyesha, likutishya*, (selfish) *tana*.
- Green, a. (unripe) *-wisi*, (of colour) *-a luambwe*.
- Greeting, n. *chilai (vi-tai)*. Ex-
- change greetings, greet each other, *pana vilai*.
- Gray, a. *-tua*. Grey hair, *mwi*.
- Grieve, v. *lila, singwa*.
- Grin, v. *saka*.
- Grind, v. (grain) *pela*, (metal) *nola*.
- Grindstone, n. (mill) *mpelo (mi-p. i. e. the lower stone, — the upper being mwana mpelo)*, (for metal) *muolo (mi-n.)*.
- Groan, v. *uula*.
- Ground, n. (land) *chalo, vyalo*, (soil) *lito*. On the ground, *pani*.
- Ground Nuts, n. *uzhyama (-)*.
- Grow, v. (in general) *kula*, (of plants) *mela*.
- Growing, a. (of plants) *-nana*.
- Growl, n. (of lion) *vundumuka*.
- Grub, n. (a large kind) *nloa (-)*.
- Grumble, v. *lilila, papata* (Ap. *-ila*).
- Guard, v. *sunga, lindila*.
- Guest, n. (stranger) *mwendo (a-l.)*.
- Guide, v. *sulula (njila)*. n. *msuluzi (a-s.)*.
- Guilty, a. He is guilty, *aiufigya* (he has done a crime).
- Guinea-fowl, n. *nkanga (-)*, (crested) *lichelwe (ma-ch.)*.
- Gully, n. *chisengu (vi-s.)*.
- Gun, n. *futi (-)*, *mfuti (-)*. Used with the verbs following: — (load) *yangila*, (raise to shoulder) *sancika*, (aim) *lungamika*, (pull trigger of) *korwa*, (fire) *lishishya*.
- Gunpowder, n. *wonga*.
- Habit, n. (custom) *chisusu (vi-s.)*.
- Hair, n. (human) *sisi (ma-s.)*, (of animal's) *usako (ma-s.)*.
- Half, n. *nimea (mi mea)*.
- Halting-place, n. *pola'a, pakuswa*. See Camp.
- Hammer, v. *konkomela*.
- Hand, n. *chanzanza (vy-a.)*.
- Handle, n. (as of hoe) *mpini (mi p.)*, (of knife, &c.) *chilalo (vi-l.)*.
- Handsome, a. *-owama, -weme*.

Hang, v. *koloweka*, (act.) *kolo-wezha*. Hang up, *pachika*.  
 Happen, v. *pona, ponela*. Cause to happen, *posa, poneshya*.  
 Be Happy, v. *seka, sangalala, yangala, chenjeleshya*.  
 Hard, a. -*umo*. Hard heart, *ntimo umo*. Hard, set look, *chinso chinso*. See Difficult.  
 Hardship, n. *ntamu* (—).  
 Harm, v. *lasa, ifya, chita*.  
 Harvest, n. (produce) *vyotwala*. Gather in harvest, *ika mutumba*. Harvest time, *msanjo* (i.e. reaping of millet crop, *mapila*). See Reap.  
 Haste, n. Make haste, *puvya, chita kupuvya*. Hasten, *puvishya, fulumishya, kulumishya*.  
 Hatch, v. (chickens) *towa*.  
 Hate, v. *ipila* (-*lishya*).  
 Have, v. (*ku*)*wa na*.  
 Having, a. -*na*, (of persons) *mwine* (*ene*) *wa*.  
 He, pr. *yove, iwo*.  
 Head, n. *mutu* (*mitu*). Head man (of village), *nfumu*, (of labourers) *kapitao*. Head-rest, *mseko* (*mi-r.*).  
 Heal, v. *poshya, wamishya*, (nt.) *pola*.  
 Heap, n. *ntutu* (—), *kapili* (*tu-p.*), (of earth, also) *mkuti* (*mi-k.*), *kamkuti* (*tumik.*), (of grass, stack) *chikusi* (*vi-k.*). v. *chita ntutu*, &c.  
 Hear, v. *mwawa, mwawila, nt.mwaweka*.  
 Heart, n. *ntima* (*mi-t.*).  
 Hearth, n. *kuziko, kumulilo*.  
 Heat, n. *chive*, (fire) *mulilo*. v. *chita chive*. See Hot.  
 Heaven, n. (upper region) *kumulu, lera*.  
 Be Heavy, v. *lema*. A heavy load, *chiya cholema*.  
 Heel, n. *katende* (*tu-t.*).  
 Height, n. *mutali*.  
 Help, n. *yayya*. Come and help me! *zoo niavye!*  
 Hen, n. *msoti*.  
 Her, pr. *yove, mu, m.* a. -*akwe*.  
 Herd, n. *mulongo* (*mi-l.*).  
 Here, ad. *uku, kuno, pano, apa*.

Hesitate, v. (be in doubt) *kaika*.  
 Hide, v. *fis*. Ps. *fsiwa*. Be in hiding, *fisama*.  
 Hide, n. *mpapa* (—), (dried) *mkupo* (*mi-k.*).  
 High, a. -*tali*.  
 Highroad, n. *mseu* (*misau*).  
 Hill, n. *lupili* (*ma-l.*). Little hill (hillock, mound), *kapili* (*tu-p.*).  
 Him, pr. *yove, mu, m.* a. -*akwe*.  
 Hinder, v. (obstruct) *chita kawindi*, (check, stop) *pengeshya, panamika*, (make leave off) *lekeshya*.  
 Hindrance, n. *kawindi* (*tu-w.*).  
 Hip, n. *uluunda* (*ma-l.*).  
 Hippopotamus, n. *mwuu* (—).  
 Hire, v. *tumishya na chilambu*. n. *chilambu* (*vi-l.*).  
 His, a. -*akwe*.  
 Hit, v. (strike) *nyata*, (wound) *lasa*.  
 Hitherto, ad. *mpaka lelo, tatikile lelo*.  
 Hive, n. *lupaoko* (*ma-l.*).  
 Hoe, n. *kambwili* (*tu-m.*). (The iron point is, *msuka* (*mi-s.*), the broad part, *utumba*.) v. *lima* (of scratching), *kanga* (of striking, with a hoe).  
 Hold, v. *kata*, (tight, fast) *kati-zhya*.  
 Hole, n. *mbolyo* (—), make a hole, *chita mbolyo, tula, tulika*.  
 Home, n. *kwasu* (my, our), *kwanu* (your), *kwao* (his, their). Go home, (*ku*)*ya na kwasu*. Want to go home, be homesick, *pukwa*.  
 Honest, a. -*endi*. Be honest, *chita uendi*.  
 Honey, n. *uuchi*. Layer of honey, comb, *chisa* (*visa*). Honey cell, *tiso* (*menso*). Whole comb, *sla*.  
 Honour, v. *lemeka, lemekeshya*.  
 Hook, n. (fish-hook) *uloo* (*ma-u.*), (hooked end of stick) *ngoa* (—). Pull down with hook, *loola*.  
 Hoop, n. *chopetana* (i.e. a round thing).  
 Hop, v. *chiluka*.  
 Horn, n. *tusengo* (*ma-l.*).

- Horrrify**, v. *yofishya, mangishya mtima.*
- Hospitality**, n. Show hospitality to, *pokelela.*
- Hot**, a. (moderately) *-a chiwe*, (very) *a-kupya*, (boiling hot) *-ovi-luka, -otapata.* Be hot, *chita chiwe, pya*, (very) *nyeka.* Make hot, *pye-shya*, (boil) *tapatishya.*
- Hour**, n. (time of day) *zua (ma-s).* What hour is it? *zua tiani?*
- House**, n. *ng'anda* (—, and *ma-ng'*). Build a (native) house, *manga ng'anda.* (Parts of a Senga hut inside,—doorway, *mulyango*; opposite side to doorway, *kuntambo.* Right side of house, *kuziko*, left side of house, *kuvuli*; right and left near doorway, *kuchipinda.*)
- Householder**, n. *mwine wa ng'anda.*
- How**, ad. *chinji, -nji, tiani.*
- Human**, a. *-a muntu, -a wantu onse.*
- Humane**, a. *-omerwana, -weme.*
- Hundred**, n. *makumi kumi.* (*Zana (ma-s.)* is also known.)
- Hunger**, n. *njala.*
- Hunt**, v. (go hunting) *sakila.*
- Hurricane**, n. *chinkuka (vi-n.), mpepo ikulu.*
- Hurry**, v. See **Haste.**
- Hurt**, v. *chita*, (wound) *lasa*, (bite, sting) *luma.* Hurt oneself, *lichita.* I have hurt my head, *nalichita mutu.* My head hurts, *mutu ukalipa.*
- Husband**, n. *mulume (a-l).*
- Husk**, n. *usenga (vy-u).*
- Hut**, n. (native house) *ng'anda* (—, and *ma-ng'*), (shed) *msasa (mi-s).* See **House.**
- Hyena**, n. *chimbwi (a-ch).*
- I**, pr. *neo, ni-, n-.* And **I**, *nane.* It is **I**, *nine.*
- Idle**, a. An idle person, *mkatasi (a-k.), aliye mpamvu.*
- If**, conj. *kati, ichiwa kuti, -ka-*
- Ignorant**, a. An ignorant person, *aliye maluso, aliye nselu.* They are ignorant, *ali teoriva.*
- Fall Ill*, v. *twa'la.*
- Ill-conditioned**, a. (low, base) *-osali (i. c. -a usali).*
- Illness**, n. *uwewe (ma-l.), ntenda* (—).
- Ill-treat**, v. *ifya, chita viipa.*
- Imitate**, v. *linga.*
- Immediately**, ad. *lomba pano, pameneapo.*
- Immortal**, a. *osafwa.* Life immortal, immortality, *moyo osafwa*, or, *osasila.*
- Implore**, v. *lambilla, lomba chendi.*
- Important**, a. *kulu.*
- Impossible**, a. *osachitika.*
- Imprison**, v. *manga.*
- Improve**, v. (act.) *wamya, wami-shya.*
- Be Impudent*, v. *pelula, chita zungo.*
- In*, prp. ad. *mu, mkati.*
- Be Inclined*, v.  *pangwa, saka.*
- Increase**, v. (make greater) *kushya*, (make more, add to) *yangi-shya.*
- Indecency**, a. *usilu, masilu.*
- Indeed**, ad. *chendi.*
- Indian Corn**, n. See **Maize.**
- India-rubber**, n. (plant) *nyimba*, (substance) *ntamsfu.*
- Be Indignant*, v. *kaitpa, kalala.*
- Indoors**, a. *mng'anda, mkati ya ng'anda.*
- Industrious**, a. He is industrious, *ena mpamvu.*
- Infant**, n. *luheche (ma-l).* Infancy, *uluheche.*
- Be Infectious*, v. *ambukila.* Infect, *ambukishya.*
- Be Infirm*, v. *tontola viso.*
- Inflate**, v. (blow into) *fwuziitila.*
- Inform**, v. *ukhya.* Inform against, *simikishya.*
- Information**, n. (useful) *maluso*, (news) *mutende (mi-t).*
- Inherit**, v. *tatika chokolo.*
- Inheritance**, n. *chokolo (vi-o).*
- Injure**, v. *lasa, ifya.*
- Inquire**, v. *konsha.*
- Insanity**, n. *usilu.*

Inside, ad. *mkati*.  
 Insolent, a. See **Impudent**.  
 Inspect, v. *loleshya*.  
 Institute, v. *pozwa, ponyezhya*.  
 Insult, v. *pelula*.  
 Intellect, n. *nzeli* (—).  
 Intelligent, a. -a *nzeli*.  
 Intend, v. *pangwa, chita nzeli*.  
 Intention, n. *iona* (*ma-l.*), *nzeli* (—).  
 Intentionally, ad. *iona*.  
 Intercede, v. *lombela, tetelela*.  
 Intercourse, n. (social) *kuyungilana*.  
 Interpret, v. (translate) *yalushya malisu*, (explain) *ushya nzeli*.  
 Intestines, n. *mala*.  
 Intimidate, v. *yofizhya*.  
 Into, prp. *mu, mkati ya*.  
 Intoxicate, v. *kolweshya*.  
 Intreat, v. *lomba, lambilila*.  
 Invite, v. *lalika, ita*.  
 Inward, a. -a *mkati*, (of mind, feelings) -a *mntima*.  
 Iron, n. *chela* (*zyela*). Work in iron, *fula chela*.  
 Irritate, v. *kululusha, ifya mtima*, (cause pain), *yasha, luma, wawa*.  
 Island, n. *nsumbu* (*ma-n.*).  
 Itch, v. *wawwiwa*. Cause itching, *wawa*.  
 Ivory, n. *nzovu* (elephant), *mi-nyangu* (tusks).  
 Jaw, n. *mwiyeke* (*mi-y.*).  
 Be Jealous, v. *chita ukwa*.  
 Jealousy, n. *ukwa* (*ma-u.*).  
 Join, v. (make a joining) *chita fundo*. Fasten together, *panikishya, katishya, manga*.  
 Joint, n. (joining) *fundo* (*ma-f.*), (of body) *chiso* (*vizo*).  
 Joke, n. *kwete* (*ma-k.*) v. *chita kwete*.  
 Journey, n. *ukwendo* (*ma-l.*).  
 Be Joyful, v. *sekelela, yangala, chenjeleshya*.  
 Judge, v. (give judgement, decide a case) *tenda mlandu, pambula mlandu*.  
 Jump, v. *chiluka*.

Jungle, n. (forest, bush) *sanga* (*ma-s.*), (thicket) *lusaka* (*ma-l.*).

Just, a. (right, fair) -*olingana, -weme, -owama*. ad. *chendi*. Just then, *chaka chamene chila, pameneapo*.

Keep, v. *sunga, lindila*, (put in store) *ika*. Keep on (persevere), *kata, katizhya*. Keep off (away), *tanda*, (ward off) *chinjilizhya*. Keep selfishly, *tana*.

Kick, v. *kumbulwa*.

Kid, n. *nwana mbuzi, kambuzi* (*tu-m.*)

Kill, v. *paya, fwizhya*, (as butcher) *nyema*.

Kind, n. *mtunda* (*mi-t.*), *chinwana*, (of size, quantity, &c.) *msinku* (*mi-s.*). What kind of? -*nji?*

Kindness, n. *uweme, kumwana*. A kindness, *shuko* (*ma-s.*). Be kind, *chita paweme*.

King, n. *nfumu* (—).

Kingdom, n. *ufumu, chalo cha nfumu*.

Kitchen, n. *kuziko, kumulilo*.

Knead, v. (with hands) *ponda*, (with feet) *kanda*.

Kneel, v. *fukama na nkokola*.

Knife, n. *uluwezi* (*mbwezi*), (large) *chiluwezi* (*vi-l.*).

Knob, n. (of stick, &c.) *mutu* (*mitu*). A knobbed club, *nkole* (—).

Knock, v. *nyata*.

Knot, n. *fundo* (*ma-f.*) v. *manga fundo*.

Know, v. *ziwa*.

Knowledge, n. *luso, maluso, kuziwa, nzeli*.

Knuckle, n. (fist) *nkonyo* (—).

Labour, n. *mulimo* (*mi-l.*) v. *chita mulimo*.

Labourer, n. *muntu wa mulimo, mmulimo* (*a-mi-l.*).

Lack, v. (be without) *sowa*, (have little of) *chepa, lezhya*. I lack strength, *niliye mpanzvu*. Food is lacking, *paliye chakulya*.

Ladder, n. *chikwelelo* (*vi-k.*).  
 Ladle, n. *chipamba* (*vi-p.*).  
 Lake, n. (large pool) *chitenga* (*vi-t.*).  
 Be Lame, v. *pintya*.  
 Lament, v. *lila, lilila*.  
 Lamp, n. (candle, &c.) *nyali* (—).  
 Lap, v. (lick up) *nyangula*.  
 Large, a. *-kulu*, (in quantity) *-nyinji*.  
 Last, a. (in order) *-a pavuli*, (finishing) *-osila, osilila*, (remaining) *osalilila*. Till at last, *tatike, tatikile*. Last month, *mwezi wafwa*. v. (endure) *nkala*.  
 Be Late, v. *muka*. Make late, *mukizhya*.  
 Laugh, v. *seka* (also, laugh at), *sekelela*.  
 Launch, v. *vuika*.  
 Law, n. (customary) *chisusu* (*vi-s.*).  
 Lawful, a. *-a chisusu*.  
 Lawsuit, n. *mlandu* (*mi-l.*).  
 Lay, v. (place) *ika*, (cause to lie) *laika*. Lay on (apply), *zola, zoleka*, (mud, plaster) *mata*. Lay eggs, *poza masumbi*.  
 Lazy, a. A lazy person, *mkatasi* (*a-k.*). He is lazy, *aliye mpanvu*.  
 Lead, v. *tangila*, (show the way) *sulula njira*.  
 Lead, n. *chitepo* (*vi-t.*).  
 Leak, v. *vwisha manzi*.  
 Lean, v. *elama*, (be aslant) *sendama*. a. Be lean, thin, *nyala*.  
 Leap, v. *chiluka*. Leap on (prey), *dalalila*.  
 Learn, v. (by teaching) *sambila, lisambizhya*. Learn a trade (art, trick), *tatika luso, kala luso*.  
 Learning, n. *nzeli, maluso*.  
 Least, a. *-tonto kuli-ense*.  
 Leather, n. *nkanda*.  
 Leave, v. *leka*, (go from) *sia*, (go away) *fuma, ima, pita*, (cause to remain) *salizhya*. Be left (remaining) *sala*, (deserted) *siwa*. Leave off, come to an end, cease, *sila*. Give leave, *zumelezhya*. Take leave, *laila*, (of each other) *lailana*.

Leaven, v. (cause to ferment) *wilishya*.  
 Left, Left hand, a. *kwanza kwanjele*.  
 Leg, n. *kwendo* (*mendo*).  
 Lend, v. *zhyamika* (also, borrow), *fializhya*. See Borrow.  
 Length, n. *mutali*.  
 Lengthen, v. *talifya*.  
 Leopard, n. *kaingo* (*tu-i.*).  
 Leprosy, n. *manzonzo*.  
 Less, a. Be less (than), *chepa* (*kuli*). Make less, lessen, *chepya*.  
 Lest, conj. *-nga-* (with verb).  
 Let, v. (allow) *zumela*. Let go, *leka, lekela*. Let alone, *sia*. Let fall, *selushya, poza*. Let down, *pela*.  
 Lethargy, n. *chitulo*.  
 Level, a. Be level, *lungama*. Make level, *lungamika*.  
 Liar, n. *mutu wa wenyi*.  
 Liberty, n. (freedom) *ufumu*.  
 Lick, v. *nyangula*.  
 Lid, n. *chivunikilo* (*vi-v.*).  
 Lie, n. *wenyi, lizu bya wenyi*. Tell lies about, *wepeshya*. v. *lala*, (tell lies) *ushya* (*lawila, nena*) *wenyi* (or, *uya wenyi*). Lie in wait for, *fisamila*.  
 Life, n. *moyo*, (mode of living) *chinkalilo* (*vi-n.*). End one's life, *sila moyo*. A life, lifetime, *nyengo ya kunkala moyo*.  
 Lift, v. *twala, twika*.  
 Light, n. (brightness) *utua*, (of sun) *kuwala*, (of day) *kazua*. A light (candle, &c.), *nyali*. a. (of colour) *-tua*, (of weight) *-pepo*. v. (give light to) *vunika*, (set alight) *yasha*, (set fire to) *shoka*. Lighted up, *-sweta*.  
 Lightning, n. *kawaliwali*. There is lightning, *Leza wapona*.  
 Like, a. Be like, *lingana na*, (*ku*) *wa chimwana chimo* (or, *mtundu umo*) *na*. v.  *pangwa, temwa*. As you like, *umo mupangwila*.  
 Be Likely to, v. (tend to) *saka*.  
 Limb, n. *chiso* (*viso*).  
 Limit, n. *mpaka* (*mi-p.*). Set a limit, *pakana mpaka*.

- Line, n. (stripe, streak) *chilembo* (*vi-l.*). Be (stand) in line, *chama*. Set in line, *chamizhya*.
- Linger, v. *muka*.
- Lion, n. *nkalamu* (—).
- Lip, n. *mulomo* (*mi-l.*). Lip-ring. *chindanda* (*vi-n.*).
- Listen, v. *mwila*.
- Little, a. *-tonto*. A little, *patonto*. Little by little, *patonto patonto*. Have little of, *chepa*.
- Live, v. (exist) *nkala moyo*, (*dwel*) *nkala*. Cease to live, *sila moyo*. Live on, *chila na*. Cause to live on, *chizhya*. *Chila moyo*, preserve one's life, survive.
- Liver, n. *chiyu* (*viyu*).
- Lizard, n. *mbulu* (—).
- Load, n. *chiya* (*viya*), (bale, bundle, sack) *mtolo* (*mi-t.*). Put load on head, *twika chiya*. Put down load, *tula* (or, *sitikizhya*) *chiya*. v. (a man) *ushya chiya*, (a canoe) *pakizhya*, (a gun) *yangila*.
- Loaf, n. *mitanda* (*mi-t.*).
- Loin, n. *uluunda* (*ma-l.*).
- Loiter, v. *muka*.
- Long, a. *-tali*. Be long, *talimpa*. Make long, *talifya*. v. *yonda*, *pangwizhya*.
- Look, v. *lola*, *lolezhya*, (appear) *oneka*. Look about, *wandula*. Look round, *cheuka*. Look for, *sakila*.
- Looking-glass, n. *chilola* (*vi-l.*).
- Loop, n. *lupuno* (*ma-l.*).
- Loose, a. Be loose, *funkika*.
- Loose, let loose (slacken) *funka*, (untie) *mangulula*.
- Lose, v. *taya*. Lose oneself, get lost, *luila*. Be lost, *tayika*, (astray) *luila*.
- Loss, n. (failure) *shamo* (*ma-*).
- Loud, a. (speak loud) *lawilizhya*, *kushya lizu*.
- Love, v. *temwa*, *pangwa*. Be loved, *temweka*.
- Low, a. *-a pansi*, (debased) *-sali*, *esali* (i. e. *-a usali*).
- Lower, v. (let down) *pela*, *seluzhya*, (a load) *tula*, (set on the ground) *sitikizhya*, (lessen) *chefya*, *lezhya*.
- Luck, n. *Leza* (God). Good luck, *shuko*. Bad luck, *shamo*, *malosa*.
- Lung, n. *sapi* (*a-r.*).
- Mad, a. *osilu* (i. e. *-a usilu*). Go mad, *latiku usilu*. Madness, *usilu*. Be Made of, v. (consist of, be composed of) *komana*.
- Magic, n. (witchcraft) *ufwizi*.
- Maintain, v. (with house, food, clothes) *pula*, (with food) *chizhya*.
- Maize, n. (plant) *malali* (*mi-s.*), (ear) *chitonga* (*vi-t.*).
- Make, v. *chita*, (construct) *wana*, *wamya*, (bring to pass) *fesa*, *ponzizhya*, (constitute, be materials of) *komana*. See *Compel*.
- Male, a. *-lumi*, *-analumi*.
- Man, n. (person) *muntu* (*wa-ntu*), (male) *mwanalumi* (*anal*), *mulume* (*a-l.*). Adult, *muntu mkulu* (*a-k.*).
- Manhood, n. *ukulu*, *kukula*.
- Mankind, n. *wantu*.
- Manslaughter, n. *ufayi*, *kufaya* *kuliye lona*.
- Many, a. *-nyinji*. How many? *-ngana?*
- Mark, v. (put mark on) *chita* *chilembo*, (observe) *lolezhya*. Mark out, (draw) *lemba*.
- Market-place, n. *positona* (i. e. *pa kus.*).
- Marriage, n. *kulingula*, *kulwana*.
- Marry, v. *lingula* (man or woman), *linguliwa* (woman), *lingulena* (man and woman).
- Marsh, n. *nsansa* (—).
- Master, n. (possessor) *mwine* (*wene*), *mnecho* (*anecho*), (as title) *asikulu*, *nfumu*.
- Mat, n. *lupasa* (*m-p.*), (made of split reeds,—long, *asitembo*, or short, *chika*,—threaded together). Make a mat, *tunga chika*.
- Match, n. (light) *fusiko*, *mulilo* *wa kusa*. Light a match, *yasha fusiko*.
- Matter, n. (affair) *chintu*, *mlandsu*, (pus) *mafina*.
- Mattress, n. (native, of reeds tied side by side) *chisampi* (*vi-t.*).

**Meal**, n. (ground grain) *unga*, (food) *chakulya (vya-k.)*.

**Mean**, a. *-sali, -osali* (i.e. *-a usali*).

**Meaning**, n. *nzelu*. Explain the meaning, *ushya nzelu*.

**Means**, n. (plan, device) *nzelu* (—), *maluso*. By means of, *na*.

**Meanwhile**, ad. *mwameneumo*.

**Measure**, n. (quantity) *msinku (mi-s.)*, *chimwana*, (a definite quantity, thing to measure by) *mulingo (mi-l.)*. v. *linga*.

**Meat**, n. *nyama*.

**Medicine**, n. *mankwala*, (magic) *ufwiti*, *malozo*. Medicine man, *nganga* (—), (wizard) *nfwiti* (—).

**Meet**, v. (come upon, find) *fwanga*, *komana*, (come together) *longana*, *ungana*, (be close together) *paka*.

**Melt**, v. *sambuluka*, (act.) *sambu-lusha*.

**Member**, n. (limb, organ, living part) *chiso (vizo)*.

**Memory**, n. *kulukana, nzelu*.

**Mend**, v. *wamya, wamishya*.

**Mention**, v. *nena, lawila, ushya*, (by name) *tula*.

**Merchandise**, n. *vyosita*.

**Merchant**, n. *osita* (i.e. *wa kusita*).

*Be Merciful*, v. *mwana, chita lusungu*.

**Mercy**, n. *lusungu, nsoni, matu* (ears). Show mercy to, *chitila lusungu*.

*Be Merry*, v. *seka, sekelela, yangala*.

**Mesh**, n. (of net) *liso (menso)*.

**Messenger**, n. *ntume (a-t.)*.

**Method**, n. *nzelu*.

**Midday**, n. *zua pakati pa mutu*.

**Middle**, n. *pakati*.

**Midnight**, n. *pakati yosiku, usiku wa pakati*.

**Migrate**, v. *nyela*. He has migrated elsewhere, *alunyelele pambi*.

**Milk**, n. *mkaka*. v. *kama*.

**Mill**, n. (for grinding) *mpelo (mi-p.)*.

**Millet**, n. *marwele*.

**Mind**, n. *nzelu, mtima*. v. (take care of) *sunga, lindila*, (attend to) *mwila*.

*Be Miserable*, v. *kululuka, sili-lika, zingwa*.

*Be Miserly*, v. *chita kasu, tana*.

**Misfortune**, n. *ntamu, malozo, shamo*.

**Miss**, v. (fail to hit) *kanga*, (feel want of) *lapa*.

**Mist**, n. *fuilele*.

**Mistake**, v. Make a mistake, *cheneka*. By mistake, unintentionally, *paliye lona*.

**Mix**, v. *yovishya*. Be mixed together, *yovikana*.

**Moan**, v. *uula*.

**Mock**, v. *pepula, seka, chita zungo*, (mimic) *linga*.

**Modern**, a. *-a lomba, -a pano*.

**Modesty**, n. *nsoni*.

**Money**, n. (coin) *ndalama*.

**Monkey**, n. Different kinds are, *kolwe (a-k.)*, *nsanji* (—), *cheta* (—), *mbongwe* (—).

**Month**, n. *mwezi (mi-ezi)*. This month, *mwezi onkala*. Last month, *mwezi wafwa*.

**Moon**, n. *mwezi (mi-ezi)*. Full moon, *mwezi ukulu*. New moon, *mwezi utonto*. Half moon, *mwezi ochepa*. The moon is bright, *mwezi watua*.

**Morass**, n. *nsansa* (—).

**More**, a. (of same kind) *-yakwe*, (of another kind) *-mbi*. Be more than, *pula, (ku)wa -nyinji kuli*. Make more, *kushya, yangishya*.

**Morning**, n. *umawa*. In the morning, *mmawa, kuzano mawa*. This morning, *umawa lelo*. Tomorrow morning, *umawa mailo*. The next morning, *mmawa zua lyakwe*.

**Morsel**, n. *katonto (tu-t.)*.

**Mortar**, n. (for pounding) *uwende (ma-w.)*.

**Mosquito**, n. *imbu* (—).

**Most**, a. *-nyinji, -nyinji kuli -onse, kupula -onse*.

**Mother**, n. *wama, nyina*. My

mother, *wama wangu, wama neo*.  
Your mother, *nyoko*. My own  
mother, *nyina enyayala*.

Mound, n. *kapili (tu-p.)*.

Mount, v. *kwela*.

Mountain, n. *chilupili (vi-l.)*.

Mourn, v. *lilila*. Mourning  
(ceremony) *malilo*.

Mouse, n. *mbwewa*.

Mouth, n. *kanwa (tumwa)*.

Move, n. (set in motion) *yende-  
zha*, (put away) *vulumula*, (transfer  
to another place) *wenjelela* (and  
*-lezha*), (migrate) *nyela*, (go) *yenda*,  
*pita, ima*.

Much, a. *nyinji*. How much?  
*tiani?*

Mucuna Bean, n. *nkasi*.

Mud, n. *matika*.

Mud-fish, n. (cat-fish) *kaponta*  
(*a-k.*).

Multitude, n. *mulongo (mi-l.)*.

Murder, v. *paya*. n. *upayi*.

Murderer, n. *mpayi (a-p.)*.

Murmur, v. (grumble) *lilila, pa-  
pata*.

Muscle, n. *msipi (mi-z.)*.

Music, n. (drum, &c.) *ng'oma*,  
(sounds) *malizu*, (songs) *nzimbo*.

My, Mine, a. *-angu*.

Mysterious, a. *-a kungsi*.

Nail, n. (of finger, toe) *lunshyala*,  
*nshyala*.

Naked, a. He is naked, *alu-  
vwule*.

Name, n. *zina (ma-z.)*. What is  
his name? *Zina iyakwe ni wani?*

Narrow, a. *-tono mutumba*,  
*-ochepa mutumba*.

Nation, n. *mkowa (mi-k.)*.

Native, n. (black person) *muntu*  
*mfupa (wantu afupa)*.

Be Naughty, v. (as a child) *pusa*.

Near, ad. *pafupi*.

Nearly, ad. *pafupi, patonto*.

Neck, n. *mkosi (mi-k.)*.

Necklace, n. *umibwa (nz.)*.

Need, v. (be without) *sowa*, (be  
short of) *chepa*, (miss) *lapa*, (want)

*pangwa, zala*. Be in need, (*destitute*)  
*kululuka*.

Needle, n. (large, native) *konyenda*  
(*tu-n.*).

Neglect, v. *zia, leka*.

Neighbour, n. (*out of same vil-  
lage*) *munc (ani)*, *kwawu (ny; kwana)*,  
your; *kwao*, their).

Neither, conj. Neither — *na*,  
e.g. I want neither this nor that,  
*ichi na ichi tenyanguwa zai*,

Nest, n. *chirumbi (vi-z.)*.

Net, n. (fishing) *kumbi (a-d.)*. Set  
a net, *tea kumbi*.

New, a. *-a lemha*.

News, n. *matendi (mi-d.)*.

Next, a. *-a kweli, -a jomwi*,  
*-yakwe*. Next day, *zwa liakwe*.  
Next morning, *wamawa waturu*.

Nice, a. *-weme, -cwama*. That  
is nice, *kweme, kwama*.

Night, n. *waku*. By day and  
night, *mkawu nosiku*.

Nine, a. *-soma na -ni*.

No, ad. *zai*. No (not so, don't),  
*ng'aa ng'aa*. No! I will not, *ng'aa no*.

Nobody, n. *paliye muntu*.

Nod, v. *ng'umwila*.

Noise, n. (of any kind) *tsu*  
(*ma-l.*). Make a noise, *nyimw*,  
*weteleta, chila zungo* (shouting).

None, a. See Nothing.

Nonsense, n. *kufusa, (joke)*  
*kwete*.

Noon, n. *zwa pa mutu, zwa pakasi*  
*pa mutu*.

Noose, n. *lufuno (ma-d.)*.

Nose, n. *mpuno (-)*. Blow the  
nose, *mina*.

Not, ad. *ti*. Not so, *zai*. These  
is not, *paliye*.

Notch, *mpanda (mi-p.)*. v. *telula*  
*mpanda*.

Nothing, n. *paliye chintu*. For  
nothing, *tiala*.

Notice, v. (observe) *owa, lola*.

Nourish, v. *lola*.

Now, ad. *lemha, pano*.

Number, v. *panda*.

Nurse, v. (child) *lola, (patient)*  
*alika*.



Oath, n. (curse) *njazi*. Take an oath, swear, *lafa*.

Obedience, n. *mwano*.

Obey, v. *mwawa*, *mwawila*, *tumikila*.

Object, v. *kanya*, *teteshya*.

Observe, v. (notice) *ona*, *lola*.

Obstacle, Obstruction, n. *ka-windi* (*tu-w.*).

Obstruct, v. *chita kawindi*, *penga*, *panamika*.

Obtain, v. *tatika*.

Be Occupied in, v. *chita*. He is occupied in (his occupation is) trade, *ochitosita* (i. e. *ochita kusita*).

Of, prp. -*a*.

Off, ad. prp. Be well off, *shuka*. Be badly off, *shama*.

Offend, v. *kalipizhya*, *kululusha*.

Offer, v. (put forward) *funya*. See Offering.

Offering, n. *nsembe* (—). Make an offering, offer, *chita nsembe*. Place of offering (to spirits), *muzimu*.

Often, ad. *kawili kawili*, *chaka na chaka*. Do (say, repeat) often, *weshhya*.

Oil, n. *majuta*.

Old, a. -*a kale*, -*okota*. Be (get) old, *kota*. An old person, *mkulukazi* (*a-k.*). How old are you? *vilimika vyanu vingana?* Old age, *kukota*.

Omit, v. *sia*, *leka*.

On, ad. prp. (upon) *pamulu*, (forward) *pantanzi*.

Once, ad. (one time) *kamo*, *chaka chimo*. Once on a time, *apo kale*. At once, *lomba pano*.

One, a. -*mo*. One man, *muntu umo*. One day, *zua limo*.

Only, ad. a. (by itself, alone) -*eka*.

Ooze, v. *vwa*.

Open, a. (open to view, clean) -*sweta*. In the open, *pasweta*. Open space in forest, *chipalamba* (*vi-p.*), (before a house) *luanza* (*mbanza*). v. (a door) *zula*, (unfasten) *mangu-lula*, (unfold) *vungulula*, (uncover) *vunukula*.

Openly, ad. *pamenso*, *pasweta*.

Ophthalmia, n. *kutwala menso*.

Oppose, v. *chita kawindi*, *kanya*, *pengezhya*.

Opposite, a. (contrary) *olekana*, (in front) *pamenso*, *pantanzi*.

Oppress, v. *chita ntamu*, *onezhya ntamu*.

Or, conj. *pambine*.

Ordeal, n. (by poison) *mwawi*. Try by ordeal, *yezhya*.

Order, n. *nzelu*. Give orders, *uzhya nzelu*.

Be Orderly, v. (quiet, calm) *nkala chelele*, *fwnza*.

Ornament, n. *samiko* (*ma-s.*).

Orphan, n. (bereaved) *ofwitwa*.

Other, a. (different) -*mbi*, (of same kind) -*yakwo*.

Otherwise, ad. *pambi*, *pambine*.

Ought, v. Expressed by *wiweme*, *kuwama*, i. e. it is good, right, fitting—or by -*nga* with verb.

Our, a. -*asu*.

Out, Outside, ad. *panja*, *kunja*. Go out, *fuma*. Put (take) out, *fumya*.

Outcast, n. *okululuka*, *osiwa*.

Outlet, n. (opening) *mulyango* (*mi-l.*), (way of escape) *njila youtu-kilamo*.

Outside, Outward, a. -*o panja*, -*o kunja*.

Outwit, v. *chencheneka*.

Over, prp. ad. (above) *kumulu*, *pamulu*, (more than) *kupula*, *kuli*.

Overcome, v. *wewya*, *teteshya*.

Overflow, v. *seuka*.

Overhear, v. *endamila*.

Overlook, v. (let pass) *sia*, *leka*, (superintend) *wamizhya*, *kulumizhya*, *chitokapitao*.

Overseer, n. *kapitao* (*a-k.*).

Overthrow, v. (demolish) *booshya*, (cause to fall) *wizhya*, (destroy) *ifya*, (overturn) *vunukila*.

Owe, n. *fiali*, (*ku*)*wa na mangawa*.

Own, a. My son, my very own, -*angu neo*, *mwine yeka*. Your own, -*ako weo*, &c.

Own, v. (confess) *zumela*, (possess) see Owner.

**Owner**, n. *mwine* (*ene*), *munecho* (*a-n.*). I am owner of the house, *neo ni mwine wa ng'anda*.

**Ox**, n. *ng'ombe*.

**Pacify**, v. *puzhya*, *puzhyizhya*, (*reconcile*) *temwanizhya*.

**Pack**, v. (fasten up) *manga*, (*stow*) *ika*, *longa*.

**Paddle**, n. *kafi* (—). v. (a canoe) *yowa* (*uwato*), (use a paddle) *chapa na kafi*.

**Pain**, n. Cause pain, (in general) *chita*, (itching) *wawa*, (cutting, throbbing) *ponda*, *tenda*, (inflammatory) *kalipa*, (stinging) *luma*. See **Hurt**. I feel pain, *yunichita* (it hurts me).

**Paint**, n. (colouring matter) *mtoto* (*mi-t.*). v. *zoleka* (*mtoto*).

**Pale**, a. *tua*.

**Paling**, **Palisade**, n. *nsito* (*ya vimiti*).

**Palm**, n. (of hand) *lupi* (*ma-l.*).

**Palpitate**, v. (as heart) *tutumila*.

**Panio**, n. *mweso ikulu*.

Be **Parallel**, v. *lingana*.

**Pardon**, v. *lekela*.

**Parent**, n. *ovyala*.

**Part**, n. (piece) *chipande* (*vi-p.*), *chipindi* (*vi-p.*), (*share*, *portion*) *nkana* (—), (*half*) *mmea* (*mi-m.*).

v. (part company) *lekana*, (*divide*) *yawa*, *yarwanya*, (*draw apart*) *manulula*. See **Break**, **Div.de**.

**Partition**, n. (in native hut) *chipinda* (*vi-p.*).

**Partly**, ad. *patonto* (a little).

**Party**, n. (company) *mulongo* (*mi-l.*), (in a trial) *simulandu* (*a-s.*).

**Pass**, v. *pita* (act.) *pizhya*, (a river) *tauka*. Let pass, *pizhya*, *leka*.

**Passionate**, a. *-a nkanza*, *-kali*.

**Past**, a. Past time, *kale*, *nyengo* *zhya kale*, *siku zhyichipila*, *mazua a pavuti*.

**Patch**, n. (of ground) *chipoka* (*vi-p.*), (piece put on) *chapa* (*viapa*). v. *chita chapa*.

**Path**, n. *njila* (—), (*side path*, *highroad*) *mseu* (*mi-s.*). Where a path begins or ends, *chitwa* (*vi-twa*).

Be **Patient**, v. (endure) *pila*, (*persevere*) *katizhya*.

**Pause**, v. (for a time) *swa*, (*stop*) *panama*.

**Paw**, n. *kwendo* (*mendo*).

**Pay**, v. *lipa*, (*wages*) *lambula*, (in full) *lipitila*. Pay back, *weleshya*, *wezhya*.

**Payment**, n. (for service) *chilambu* (*vi-l.*).

**Peace**, n. *mtendele*.

**Pebble**, n. *kamwala* (*tumiala*).

**Peep**, v. *wandula*, *loleshya*.

**Penetrate**, v. *pita pakati*, *loa*.

Be **Penitent**, v. *lapa*.

**People**, n. *wantu*.

**Perceive**, v. (by mind, or senses) *mwawa*.

Be **Perfect**, v. (complete, finished) *sililila*.

**Perhaps**, ad. *pambine*, *pambi*, *ingawe*, (possibly, I don't know) *kano*, *kansi*, *kaya*.

**Perish**, v. *fwa*, *sila*.

**Permit**, v. *zumela*.

Be **Perplexed**, v. *kaika*, *zingwa*.

**Persecute**, v. *chita ntamu*, *oneshya ntamu*.

**Persevere**, v. *kata*, *katizhya*.

**Person**, n. *muntu* (*wantu*).

**Perspire**, v. *tukuta*.

**Persuade**, v. *chenjeleka*.

**Pestilence**, n. *ntenda ikulu*.

**Pestle**, n. *muni* (*mi-ni*).

**Pet**, n. *otemweka*.

**Pick**, v. (pick up) *tola*, (*take up*) *twala*. Pick at (as fowl) *jongoola*.

**Piece**, n. *chipande* (*vi-p.*), *chipindi* (*vi-p.*). Small pieces, *zitonto*.

**Pierce**, v. *pita pakati*, *loa*.

**Pig**, n. *ngulurwe* (—).

**Pigeon**, n. *nkunda* (—).

**Pile**, n. (heap) *ntutu*, *mkuti* (*mi-k.*), *chikusi* (*vi-k.*), *kapili* (*tu-p.*). v. *chita ntutu*, &c.

**Pillow**, n. (wooden head-rest) *mseko* (*nseko*).

**Pinch**, v. *finu*.

Pipe, n. (for tobacco) *chikololo* (*vi-k.*).

Pit, n. *mbolyo* (—), (for game, pitfall) *mbwina*.

Pitcher, n. *nongo*. See Vessel.

Pity, n. *lusungu*, *nsoni*, *kunvwa-na*, *matu* (ears). v. *chita lusungu*, &c.

Place, n. *malo* (—). Place is commonly indicated by *pa-*, *po-*. This place, *apa*; that place, *pala*. Drinking-place, *ponwela*. In the first place, *potatika*.

Plain, n. *msilensi* (*mi-s.*), *chalo choseyama*.

Plait, v. (grass, hair) *pikula*.

Plan, n. *nzelu* (—), *lona* (*ma-l.*). Make a plan, *tatika* (or, *chita*) *nzelu*.

Plank, n. *chimuti* (*vi-miti*), *chopampantala*.

Plant, v. *sika* (with hand), *komela* (with hoe, in trench). n. *chomela* (*vyom.*).

Plantation, n. *munda* (*minda* —general, but esp. of millet, *mapila*), *chipoka* (*vi-p.*), *chitemo* (*vi-t.*), *chinhawa* (*vi-n.*).

Plaster, v. (apply mud) *mata*, (apply oil, &c.) *zola*, *zoleka*.

Plate, n. (native platter) *lulilo* (*ma-lu.*).

Platform, n. (for watching fields) *ndala* (*ma-nd.*).

Play, v. *sewela*, (on instrument) *lishya*.

Plead, v. (with, for) *tetelela*, *lambilila*.

Pleasant, a. *-weme*, *-owama*.

Please, v. *wama*, *wamila*, (content, satisfy) *kusha*, *pangwa*, *pang-wishya*, (rejoice) *sekezhya*. As you please, *umo mumpangwila*.

Pleasure, n. (feeling) *kuseka*, *kuyangala*, (thing that pleases) *chowama*. See Please.

Plentiful, a. *nyinji*. Be plentiful, *paka*.

Be Pliant, v. *tepuka*.

Plot, n. *nzelu* (—). v. *tatika* *nzelu*, (conspire) *chenchenekana*.

Pluck, v. (flowers, fruit) *chela*,

(a fowl) *pusula*, (maize) *fyokola*, (millet) *sanja*, (rice) *pulula*.

Plug, v. (stop hole) *sinka*.

Plunder, v. *ifya*, *poka*.

Plunge, v. *bila*, (act.) *bishya*.

Poetry, n. (songs) *nzimbo*.

Point, n. (tip, sharp end) *chinsopwe* (*vi-n.*). v. (out with finger) *ushya*, (make pointed) *songola*.

Poison, n. (made) *wanga*, (natural, venom) *chileme*.

Pole, n. (in general) *chimuti* (*vimiti*), (of wall, post) *chinsi* (*vinsi*), (of roof) *lusondo* (*nsondo*), (for pounding, pestle) *munsi* (*minsí*), (punting) *msondo* (*mi-s.*).

Be Polite to, v. *lemekezhya*.

Pond, Pool, n. *tenga* (*ma-t.*), (large lake) *chilenga* (*vi-t.*).

Poor, a. (destitute) *-okululuka*.

A poor man, *mmpawi* (*a-n.*).

Porcupine, n. *nyunji* (—).

Porridge, n. *nsima*.

Porter, n. *mtwali wa chiya* (*atwali a viya*).

Portion, n. (part) *chipande* (*vi-p.*), *chipindi* (*vi-p.*), (proper share) *nkana* (—), (regular allowances) *mselu* (*mi-s.*).

Position, n. See Place, Condition.

Possessions, n. *chuma* (*vyuma*), *mpango* (—).

Possessor, n. *mwine* (*ene*), *mu-necho* (*a-n.*).

Be Possible, v. *chitika*. Possibly, ad. see Perhaps.

Post, n. See Pole.

Potato, n. (sweet) *mbwansi* (—).

Potter, n. *muumbi* (*a-u.*). Make of clay (as potter), *umba*. Pottery, *vintu vya lito*.

Pound, v. *ponda*, (as grain in mortar) *twa* (*Ap. twila*).

Pour, v. *tila*, (away) *taya*, *mwazhya*, (of rain) *lokwa*.

Poverty, n. *kululuka*.

Powder, n. (gunpowder) *wonga*.

Power, n. *mpamvu*, *makosa*.

Praise, v. *lumbia*.

Pray, v. *lambila*, *lomba*.

Prefer, v. (choose) *salula*, (like) *pangwa*, *temwa*.

Become Pregnant, v. *tatika vumo*.

Prepare, v. *wanya*, *ika paweme*, *panga*.

Present, n. *chawansi* (*vya-w.*), *chintu cha wansi*, *chintu cha tiala*. v. *pa*, *pezhya*, *fumya*. a. -a *lomba*, -a *pano*, -*onkala*.

Preserve, v. (keep) *sunga*, *ika*, (save) *puzumushya*.

Press, v. *finu*, (feel with finger) *tonfya*, (be a burden) *lema*.

Pretend, v. *wepeshya*, (make oneself as if) *lichita kati*.

Pretty, a. -*owama*.

Prevent, v. *penga*, *pengeshya*, (stop) *panamika*.

Price, n. *mtengo*.

Pride, n. *chimeko* (*vi-m.*). Show *pride*, *meka*, *chita chimeko*.

Prison, n. *pomanga wantu*, *pomangiwa*.

Prisoner, n. (of war) *nkole* (—).

Private, a. (secret) -a *kunsei*.

Probably, ad. *ingawe*. See *Perhaps*.

Proclaim, v. *ushya*.

Produce, v. (make, form) *chita posa*, (put forth) *fumya*, (as offspring) *vyala*, (as fruit, &c.) *twala*.

Products, n. *vyotwala*.

Profit, n. *shuko* (*ma-s.*).

Prohibit, v. *kanishya*.

Project, be Prominent, v. *sololoka*.

Promise, v. *zumeleshya*, (on terms) *uzhyana*.

Pronounce, v. *nema*, *lawila*, (clearly) *lawilishya*.

Proof, n. (eyewitness, evidence) *ukameno*.

Prop, v. *chilikila*. n. *nchilikilo* (—).

Be Proper, v. *wama*, *lingana*.

Property, n. *mpango* (—), *chuma* (*viuma*).

Propitiate, v. (pacify) *pushya*.

Prosecute, v. *songa mlandu*.

Prosper, v. *shuka*.

Prostitute, n. *kachenche* (*tu-ch.*), *mkazi opombo* (i. e. *a-up.*).

Protect, v. *sunga*, *lindilila*.

Be Proud, v. *meka*, *chitomeka*.

Providence, n. (divine) *Leta*.

Provisions, n. *viyo*, *vyakushya*.

Provoke, v. *kalipishya*, *kululusha*, (tease) *tatika*.

Prow, n. *mutu* (*mitu*).

Be Prudent, v. (cautious) *lisenga*, (worldly wise) *chenjela*.

Pry, v. *wandula*, *loleshya*.

Puberty, n. *uku'u*.

Public, a. -a *onse*, -a *wantu onse*, (open) -*sweta*. Make public, publish, *yenderhya*, *ushya*.

Puff, v. *fwuzila*.

Pull, v. (draw) *kula*, (tug at) *punyumunya*, (tight) *tinta*.

Pumpkin, n. (plant) *mwungu* (*mi-u.*), *kapandu* (*a-k.*), (fruit) *lunyungu* (*nyungu*).

Pungency, n. *ukali*, *ululu*. Give pungency, *kalipishya*.

Punish, v. (by word, warn, correct) *ushya*. Ps. *ushyirwa*, (by act) *langa*.

Punt, v. *solola na msendo*. Punting pole, *msendo* (*mi-s.*).

Pupil, n. (of eye) *mboni*, (of master) *mwana*.

Pure, a. (clean, white) -*tua*, (unmixed) -*eka*.

Purgative, n. *mankwala onyeshya mala*.

Purify, v. *tuusha*, *tuulishya*.

Purity, n. *utua*.

Purpose, n. *nzeu* (—), *lona* (*ma-l.*). On purpose, *lona*. Not on purpose, *te lona*, *paliye lona*.

Pursue, v. (chase) *utusha*, *sakila*, (follow) *konka*.

Push, v. *kanka*, *kankishya*. Push off (a canoe), *wvusha*.

Put, v. *ika*. Put away, *ika*, *zulumula*. Put aside (on one side), *ika nombali*. Put down, *ika panci*, (a load) *tula*, *sitikishya*. Put in place (order), *wanya*, *longa*. Put in line, *chimishya*. Put first, *tangula*. Put off (clothes), *wvuala*, (act.) *wvulisha*. Put on (clothes), *wvuala*, *pichila*, (act.) *wvualika*, *wvualika*.

- Put out, (extend) *fumya*, (extinguish) *zimya*, *tima*.
- Putrefy, v. *ola*.
- Puzzle, v. *kaikishya*, *nesa*, *ya-ngizhya*. Puzzling words, *malizu onesa*.
- Python, n. *nsatu* (—).
- Quality, n. *mtundu* (*mi-t.*).
- Quantity, n. *msinku* (*mi-s.*), *chimwana* (*vi-m.*), *mutengo* (*mi-t.*).
- A quantity of, *nyinji*.
- Quarrel, n. *mulomo* (*mi-l.*), (fighting) *kunyatana*. v. *chita mulomo*.
- Queen, n. *nfumu ikazi*.
- Question, v. *konsha*.
- Be Quick, v. *puvya*, *puvizhya*. Come back quickly, *puvuwela* (i. e. *puvya ku-*).
- Quiet, a. Be quiet, *nkala chelele*, *fwusa*, *pumula*. Make quiet, *pushya*. Go quietly, *pita paweme*, (of still water) *mbomboza*.
- Quite, ad. *chendi*, *ngako*.
- Quiver, n. *mtumbwa* (*mi-t.*). v. *letema*.
- Rabbit, n. *kalulu* (*a-k.*).
- Race, n. (tribe) *mkowa* (*mi-k.*), (running) *kuyezhyana lulo*.
- Rafter, n. (roof pole) *msondo* (*mi-s.*).
- Rage, n. *ukali*, *kukalipa*, *nkanza*.
- Rain, n. *mvula* (—). Rainy season, *mainza*. Light rain, drizzle, *mvula yofuta*. Heavy rain, *milochi*. v. *loka*, *lokwa*, *pona*. It is raining, *kulokwa mvula*.
- Raise, v. (lift, as load) *twala*, (set up) *imya*, (increase, add to) *kuzhya*.
- Ransom, v. *ombola*, *omboleshya*, *nunula*.
- Rap, v. (as with hammer) *konkowela*.
- Rape, n. See Ravish.
- Rapid, n. (of river) *manzi a yumu*, *manzi opita yumu*. a. See Quick.
- Rat, n. *korwe* (*ma-k.*).
- Rather, ad. (a little) *patonio*, (preferably) *wiweme*.
- Ration, n. *mselu* (*mi-s.*), *poro*.
- Ravage, v. *ifya*.
- Ravine, n. *chisengu* (*vi-s.*).
- Ravish, v. *chinda*.
- Raw, a. *-wisi*.
- Razor, n. *kameto* (*tu-m.*).
- Reach, v. (arrive at) *fwika*.
- Real, a. *-endi*, *-a chendi*, *nga-*.
- Really, ad. *chendi*, *ngako*.
- Reap, v. (millet) *sanja*. Reaping time, *msanjo*.
- Rear, v. (bring up) *lala*. n. In the rear, *pavuli*, *kuvuli*.
- Reason, n. (intelligence) *mselu*, (cause) *mlandu* (*mi-l.*). For what reason? *mlandu wanji?*
- Rebellion, n. (disobedience) *mowano*.
- Receive, v. *poka*, (as guest) *pokelela*, *penga*.
- Reckon, v. *penda*, *welenga*.
- Recognize, v. (remember) *lukana*.
- Reconcile, v. *temwanishya*.
- Recover, v. (get back) *weleshya*, (by payment) *ombola*, *nunula*, (get well) *pola*.
- Recur, v. *welela*.
- Red, a. *-sweta*. (A European is called *muntu msweta*, a red, ruddy man.)
- Redeem, v. *ombola*, *nunula*.
- Reduce, v. (make less) *chefya*.
- Reed, n. *tete* (*ma-t.*).
- Reflect, v. (think) *lukana*.
- Reform, v. *wamishya*.
- Refuse, v. *kana*.
- Regret, v. (a fault, loss) *lapa*.
- Reject, v. *kana*, (throw away) *taya*.
- Rejoice, v. *sekelela*, *yangala*, *sangalala*.
- Release, v. *mangulula*, *leka*.
- Relentless, a. He is relentless, *aliye matu*.
- Relish, n. (seasoning) *naiwo* (—).
- Remain, v. (continue) *nkala*, (make a stay) *swa*, (be left) *sala*.
- Remember, v. *lukana*.
- Remind, v. *lukanishya*.
- Remorse, n. *kulapa*.
- Remove, v. See Move.
- Renounce, v. *kanya*.

Repair, v. *wamya*.  
 Repay, v. *weshya*, *lipa*.  
 Repeat, v. (say, do again) *welashya*.  
 Repent, v. *lafa*.  
 Reply, v. (to question) *yasuka*, (to call) *itawa*.  
 Reproach, Reprove, v. *ushya*, *tusula*.  
 Repulse, v. *teteshya*, *utusha*, *wewya*.  
 Request, v. *lomba*.  
 Requite, v. *welashya*, *lipishya*, *lipa*.  
 Rescue, v. *puzumushya*.  
 Resent, v. (be offended at) *kalipila*.  
 Resist, v. (struggle) *twa*. See Oppose.  
 Resolute, a. *-okosa mtima*.  
 Resolve, n. *nzulu*, *lona*. v. *chita nzulu*.  
 Respect, v. *lemeka*, *lemekeshya*. Be respectful, *chitolemekeka*. (Respect is shown by use of Plural, and such terms as, *asikulu*, *njumu*, *wene aine*. A respectful salute is, *Taone*, the answer being, *Taoneka*.)  
 Rest, v. *pumula*, *lala*. n. *kupumula*, (remainder) *yosala*.  
 Be Restless, v. *palapata*, *takataka*.  
 Resurrection, n. See Revive.  
 Retire, v. *wela*, (*ku*) *ya pavuli*, (run away) *utuka*.  
 Return, v. *wela*. Ap. *welala*, *welalela*. Cs. *welashya*, *weshya*, (pay back) *lipa*.  
 Reveal, v. *vumbulula*.  
 Revelry, n. *kukolwa*.  
 Revenge, n. Take revenge, *welashya*, *lipishya*.  
 Reverence, v. *lemekeshya*.  
 Revive, v. *nka moyo*. Revival, recovery of consciousness, *lupunje-punje*.  
 Reward, n. (for service) *chilambu (vi-l)*, (present) *chintu cha tiala*.  
 Rhinoceros, n. *chipembele (vi-p)*.  
 Rib, n. *livambo (ma-w)*.  
 Rice, n. *mfunga*.  
 Rich, a. Be rich, *lema*. A rich man, *mzambazi (a-z)*.

Riches, n. *chuma*, *mpango*.  
 Ridicule, v. *seka*, *pelula*, *pepula*, *chita zungo*.  
 Right, a. (good, correct, &c.) *-weme*, *-olingana*. Rightly, that is put to rights, *aweme*, *wiweme*. Put right, *wamya*, *wamishya*.  
 Right hand, *kwanja*, *kwendi*, *kwanja kulyela*. Claim as a right, *simikishya*.  
 Ring, n. (finger) *kalunda mumwe (tulunda minwe)*, (arm, leg) *msensa (mi-s)*.  
 Ripe, a. *-a kupyia*. Get ripe, *pya*. Make ripe, *pyesha*.  
 Rise, v. (stand up) *ima*, (go up) *kwela*, (get up from sleep) *uka*, (early) *chelela*.  
 River, n. *kamana (tu-m)*.  
 Road, n. *njila (-)*. Highroad, side road, *mscu (mi-s)*. On the road, *panjila*.  
 Roar, v. (of lion, &c.) *uluma*.  
 Roast, v. *yocha*.  
 Rob, v. *punsha*, *poka*.  
 Robber, n. (by force) *kapondo (tu-p)*. See Thief.  
 Rock, n. *chimwala (vimiaala)*. v. (sway, swing) *zwezwela*.  
 Roll, v. (along) *kunkuluka*, (up) *vunga*, (round) *zungulushya*.  
 Rollers, n. *ntanto (-)*.  
 Roof, n. *ntenje (mi-t)*.  
 Room, n. (part of house, native) *chipinda (vi-p)*, (open space) *pasweta*.  
 Root, n. *muzhyu (mi-zh)*. v. Root up, *nyula*.  
 Rope, n. (bark-strip) *luzizi (nzizi)*, (plaited) *mwando (mi-a)*.  
 Rot, v. *ola*. Rotten, *oola*.  
 Rough, a. (stony) *-a nkolokoto*, (in manner) *-kali*.  
 Round, a. *-opetana*. Be round, *petana*. Make (bend) round, *peta*. Go round, *zunguluka*. Put (turn) round, *zungulushya*. Be all round, *zunguluka*. Be smoothly, evenly round, *lungika*, *lungama*. ad. *kuzunguluka*, (on all sides) *mbali zhyonse*.  
 Rouse, v. *usha*.

Row, n. Be in a row, *chama*.  
Set in a row, *chamizhya*.

Rub, v. *tuula*.

Rubber, n. See India-rubber.

Rubbish, n. *viswaswa*.

Rubbish Heap, n. *chungu (vi-u)*.

Be Rude, v. *pepula*.

Ruin, v. *ifya*. n. *kufiwa*, (loss, failure) *shamo*.

Rule, n. (order) *lizu (ma-l)*, *nzelu* (—), (custom) *chisusu (vi-s)*, (dominion) *ufumu*.

Rumour, n. *mbili* (—).

Run, v. Run away, run off (escape, fly), *utuka*, (go fast) *yendezhya*, *tuila*, *puwya kuyenda*.

Running, n. *luilo (ma-l)*.

Rust, n. *nguwe*.

Sacrifice, n. See Offering.

Be Sad, v. (in look) *chita nsini*, (in mind) *lila*, *silibika mntima* (or, *mchifua*).

Safe, a. A safe place, *pweme*, *pakiye lusa*.

Sake, n. For your sake, *mlandu wa mwao*.

Sale, n. *usita*, *kusita*.

Salt, n. *munyu*.

Salute, n. (greeting) *chilai (vi-l)*, v. *chita vilai*, *pelekezhya vilai*.

Same, a. *-mo -mo*, *-amene -la*, *mtundu umo*, *chimwana chimo*.

Sand, n. *mseche*. A grain of sand, *kamseche (tu-m)*.

Be Sarcastic, v. *chita zungo*, *pepula*.

Satisfy, v. (content, be enough for) *kusha* (i.e. *kutizhya*).

Be Satisfied, *kuta*.

Sauce, n. *mito (mito)*.

Savage, a. *-kali*, *-payi*.

Save, v. (rescue) *puzumushya*, (economize) *ika*, *kata*.

Say, v. (say, say to, tell) *nen*, *lawila*, *ushya*, *ti*.

Scale, n. (of fish) *limamba (mamba)*.

Scar, n. *wanga (ma-w)*.

Be Scarce, v. *chepa*.

Scatter, v. (spread about) *mwuzhya*, (disperse) *utusha*.

Scent, v. (smell, act.) *nusha*.

Scold, v. *tuzula*, *fyokolela (malian akali)*.

Scorch, v. *pya*, *yasha*.

Scorpion, n. *kalizhya (tu-l)*.

Scrape, v. *tuula*.

Scratch, v. *tola*.

Scream, v. *lila*, *lizhya*.

Screen, n. (in room, partition) *chipinda (vi-p)*.

Search, v. *saka*, *sakila*.

Season, n. (in general) *nyengo*.

Seasons of the year, in order, (wet) *mainza*, (cold) *mwela*, (dry, warm) *chisalo*, (planting time) *muundo*.

Seasoning, n. (of any kind) *ndiwo*.

Seat, n. *chilimba (vi-l)*.

Second, a. *-a kawili*.

Secret, a. *-a kunsai*.

See, v. (with eye) *ona*, *lola*, (understand) *mwawa*.

Seed, n. *mbuto* (—).

Seize, v. *kata*, *katizhya*.

Self, a. *-ine*, *-amene*, *-eka*. The Reflexive prefix is *li* with a verb, e.g. *nalichila*, I have hurt myself, sometimes with *-eka*, or *mtima* (heart) added.

Be Selfish, v. *tana* (keep things to oneself). A selfish person, *mtani*.

Selfishness, *kutana*, *utani*.

Sell, v. *sita*, (also, buy).

Send, v. (dispatch) *tuma*, *pelekezhya*, (convey) *twala*. Send before, *tangula*, *tangizhya*. Send away, *fumizhya*.

Sense, n. (in all meanings) *nzelu*.

Become Senseless, v. (unconscious) *taya nzelu*, (foolish) *opusa*, *-aliye nzelu*.

Sensible, a. (intelligent) *-na nzelu*.

Sensitive, a. *-a kumvwa*, *omvvila ngako*.

Separate, v. (divide) *yawa*, (cut off, in two) *tenda*, (pull apart) *manulula*, (part company) *lekana*, (put apart) *ika -eka*. a. (by itself) *-eka*.

Serpent, n. *njoka* (—).  
 Servant, n. *mlumbwana* (a-l.), *mtume* (a-t.), (slave) *kapolo* (a-k.).  
 Serve, v. *tumikila*. Service, *utume*.  
 Set, v. (put, place) *ika*, (of sun, moon) *swa*, *lowa*, (a trap) *tea*. Set up, *inya*, (upright) *pananika*, *usha*, *ika paweme*. Set in order, *wamishya*. Set straight, *linganishya*.  
 Settle, v. (agree) *zumela*, *uchyana*, (reside) *nkala*, (decide) *tenda*, *pambula*, (as sediment) *pona pansi*.  
 Seven, a. *-sano na -wili*.  
 Several, a. *-nyinji*.  
 Severe, a. *-kali*, *-a nkanza*, *mitima uno*.  
 Sew, v. *wila*.  
 Shade, Shadow, n. *chimfuli* (vi-m.).  
 Shake, v. *sungunika*, *tutuma*, *telema*.  
 Shallow, a. *-fupi*, *-tonto*.  
 Sham, a. *-a wenyi*.  
 Shame, n. (feeling) *nsoni*. Put to shame, make ashamed, *chizhya nsoni*.  
 Shape, n. *mtundu* (mi-t.).  
 Share, n. *nkana* (—). v. *yarwa*, *yawanya*.  
*Be Sharp*, v. (of edge, point) *lumata*.  
 Sharpen, v. (metal) *nola*, (wood) *songola*.  
 Shave, v. (the head) *meta metu*, *weya mutu masisi*, (clean) *meta mpala*, (in patterns) *metelega*.  
 She, pr. *ivo*, *yove*.  
 Sheath, n. *chilalo* (vi-l.).  
 Shed, n. *msasa* (mi-s.). v. (leaves) *yoyosha*, (tears) *lila misosi*. *Be shed*, *yoyoka*.  
 Sheep, n. *mbelele* (—).  
 Shell, n. (of egg) *chikonkomwa* (vi-k.), (of tortoise, &c.) *chigamba* (vi-g.).  
 Shelter, n. (shed) *msasa* (mi-s.). v. See Protect. Take shelter from (sun, rain, &c.), *sitika* (*zua*, *mwula*, &c.).  
 Shield, n. (of hide) *mpapa* (—).

Shine, v. *yesima*, (of sun) *wala*, *walishya*, (of lamp, fire) *yaka*.  
 Shiver, v. *tetemela*, *tutumila*.  
 Shock, v. (the feelings) *kanganishya*, *mangishya mtima*.  
 Shoe, n. (described as) *nkanda* (—) *ya kwendo*.  
 Shoot, v. (arrow, missile) *poza*, (a gun) *lizhya*, (hit) *lasa*, (kill) *paya*, (put out leaves) *pululuka*. Go shooting, *sakila*. n. *msonji* (mi-s.).  
 Shop, n. (place) *posita*.  
 Shore, n. *silya* (ma-s.).  
 Short, a. *-fupi*, *-tonto*. A short time, *nyengo itonto*, *patonto*. Be short, *finfimpa*. Make short, shorten, *funfunishya*, *chefya*. Be short of, *chepa*.  
 Shot, n. *melisao*.  
 Shoulder, n. *pewa* (ma-p.). v. *twala pa pewa*.  
 Shout, n. *lisu* (ma-l.), (loud) *zungo*. v. *lila*.  
 Show, v. *ushya*, (road, as guide) *sulula*. Make a show, be showy, *meka*, *chilomeka*.  
 Shower, n. *mwula itonto*, (light) *mwula yofuta*.  
 Shrub, n. *chomela* (vyo-m.).  
 Shrug, v. (the shoulder) *inya* (*pewa*).  
 Shut, v. (door, &c.) *zala*. Shut up, *manga*.  
*Be Shy*, v. *chita nsoni*.  
*Be Sick*, v. (ill) *hwalu*, (very ill) *lwalishya*, (vomit) *luka*. A sick man, *olwala*, *mulwele* (a-l.).  
 Sickness, n. *ulwele* (mwewe), *ntenda*, (vomiting) *kuluka*.  
 Side, n. *mbali* (—). On one side, *mmbali*, *pambali*. On both sides, *pakawili*. On all sides, *mbali shyonse*.  
 Sieve, n. *lusanso* (ma-lus.).  
 Sift, v. *pepeta*.  
 Sight, n. *kuona*, *kulola*. A sight (wonder), *chokanganya*.  
 Sign, Signal, n. Make a sign, *cheuzhya*.  
 Silence, n. *chelele*. v. (stop noise) *pushishya*. Silence! *iwani chelele!*



Keep silence (be silent), *nkala* (or, *chita*) *chelele*.

Be Silly, v. *pusa*.

Sin, n. *uipa*.

Since, ad. prp. conj. (from time of) *itangila*, *ifuma*, (because) *mandu*, *pakuti*. Some time since, *siku zhinyinji zhichapita*.

Sinew, n. *mzipi* (*mi-s.*).

Sing, v. *imba*.

Single, a. *-mo eka*.

Sink, v. (in water) *bila*, (act.) *bizhya*.

Sir, n. (title of respect) *asikulu*, *ufumu*.

Sister, n. (full) *mlongosi* (*a-l.*), *mulisa* (*a-l.*).

Sit, v. *kala*. Sit down, *kala pansi*, (on buttocks) *kala na matako*, *kali-zhya*, (on heels) *nyunya mala*.

Six, a. *-sano na -mo*.

Size, n. *msinku* (*mi-s.*), *chimwana*.

Skeleton, n. *vifupa*.

Skill, n. *nzeli*, *maluso*, *ung'anga*.

Skin, n. *mpapa* (—), (when flayed, dry) *mkupo* (*mi-k.*). Cast skin (of snake), *chifundulwa* (*cha njoka*). v. *fundula mpapa*.

Skull, n. *fupa* (*ma f.*) *lya mutu*.

Sky, n. *Leza*, *kumulu*.

Slacken, v. (as rope) *funka*. Be slack, *funkika*.

Slander, v. *wepeshya*, *simikishya*.

Slant, v. (be slanting, slope down) *sendama*.

Slap, v. *nyata lupi*.

Slaughter, v. *paya*, (as butcher) *nyema*. n. *upayi*.

Slave, n. (male or female) *kapolo* (*a-k.*). Female slave, *mushya* (*wazhya*).

Slavery, n. *ukapolo* (opp. to *ufumu*, freedom).

Sleep, n. *tulo* (*twa*). v. *lala tulo*

Slide, Slip, v. *telela*.

Slit, v. *panidula*.

Slowly, ad. *patonto patonto*, *pa-weme*.

Be Sly, v. *chenjela*.

Small, a. *-tonto*. A small quantity, *patonto*.

Be Smart, v. (in dress) *zwalila*, *sama*, *meka*.

Smell, v. *nunsha*. Have a sweet smell, *nunka paweme*. Have a bad smell, *nunka chichiwi*.

Smile, v. *seka*, *sekelela*.

Smoke, n. *chusi* (*viusi*). v. (tobacco) *pepa* (*fwaka*).

Smooth, a. Be smooth, *lungama*, *lingana*. Make smooth, *lungamika*, (of plaster on wall) *kukula*.

Snake, n. *njoka*.

Snap, v. Snap off (in two), (act.)

*tyola*, (nt.) *tyoka*, *kwatika*.

Snare, n. *mwando* (*mi w.*). v. *tea*.

Snore, n. *nukono* (*mi-n.*). v. *chita ninkono*.

Snuff, n. *fwaka ya kufwemba*. Take snuff, *fwemba*.

Snuff-box, n. *ntekwe* (—).

So, ad. (thus) *tete*. So and so, (of person) *achiite*.

Soak, v. *ika mmanzi*, *vuika*.

Soft, a. Get soft, *sembuluka*.

Soil, n. *lilo*.

Sole, n. (of foot) *ulwayo* (*ma-l.*).

Solid, a. (hard, firm) *-umo*.

Solitary, a. *-eka*.

Some, a. Some of, see Part, Little. Often expressed by *-mo*, *-ko*, &c. after a verb. *Mwelako*, drink some of it.

Son, n. *mwana* (*wana*).

Song, n. *uluimbo* (*nzimbo*).

Soon, ad. *patonto*, *pafupi*.

Soot, n. *misimbi*.

Soothe, v. *pushya*.

Sore, n. *chilonda* (*vi-l.*).

Be Sorry, Feel Sorry, v. *lila*, *silikika*, *kwinyinyika*. Be sorry for, (regret) *lapa*, (pity) *mwana na*.

Sort, n. (kind, quantity) *mtundu* (*mi t.*), *chimwana*.

Soul, n. (in body) *Mzimu* (*mi-s.*), (after death) *chiwanda* (*vi-w.*).

Sound, n. (of every description) *tizu* (*ma l.*). v. *lia* (includes articulate speech, cries of animals, &c., music, noise, &c.). a. *-weme*, *-endi*.

Soup, n. *muto* (*mito*).

- Sour, a. *-kali, -olulu* (i.e. *-a-ul.*).  
 Turn (make) sour, *kalipishya*.  
 Source, n. (of stream) *sauko* (*ma-s.*), (beginning) *potatika*.  
 Sow, v. *zika, komela*. Sowing time, *muundo*.  
 Spare, v. (let off) *lekela*.  
 Spark, n. *kungupya* (*vi-k.*).  
 Speak, v. *nena, lawila, uzhya*.  
 Spear, n. *fumo* (*ma-f.*). (The shaft is *msama* (*mi-s.*), the butt, *nkusa* (—), blade, *fumo*.)  
 Speckled, a. *-a matoto*.  
 Speech, n. *malizu*. Power of speech, *kuziwa kunena*.  
 Spell, n. (magic) *malosa*. Put a spell on, *loa*.  
 Spend, v. (use up) *tumishya, lya*.  
 Spill, v. *mwashya, taya*.  
 Spin, v. (of cotton, draw out) *vuta ntonji*, (roll on leg) *sansa ntonji*, (go round) *zunguluka*.  
 Spinster, n. *mpala* (*a-p.*).  
 Spirit, n. (See Soul: (energy) *mpamvu*, (fermented liquor) *walwa*.  
 Spit, n. (forked stick) *mpano* (*mi-p.*). v. *taya mata*, (put on spit) *panika*.  
 Spittle, n. *mata*.  
 Split, v. *bandula*.  
 Spoil, v. *ifya, lasa*. Be spoiled, *ifwa*.  
 Spoon, n. *choncho* (—).  
 Spoor, n. *malwayo*.  
 Spot, n. *toto* (*ma-l.*), *wala* (*ma-wala*).  
 Spotted, a. *-a matoto, -a mawala*.  
 Spread, v. (as a mat) *yanahya*, (publish) *yendeshya*, (clothes, cloth) *yanzika*, (to dry) *yanika*.  
 Spring, n. (of water) *sauko* (*ma-s.*). See Season. v. (jump) *chiluka*, (as water) *sauka*. Spring upon (prey), *dalalila*.  
 Sprinkle, v. *kapishya*.  
 Sprout, v. *tumba, chita msonji*.  
 Squabble, n. *mulomo wa tiala*.  
 Squat, v. (on heels) *nyunya mala*, (on haunches) *kala na matako, kalizhya*.  
 Squeeze, v. *fina, kama*. Squeeze out, *kamula*.  
 Stage, n. (for watcher in fields) *ndala* (*ma-n.*).  
 Stain, n. *mtoto* (*mi-t.*). v. *zoleka mtoto*.  
 Stairs, n. *vikwelelo*.  
 Stalk, n. *msali* (*mi-s.*).  
 Stammering, n. *chuluutu*. Stammer, *chita* (or, *lawila*) *chiluutu*.  
 Stamp, v. (with foot) *wanda*. n. (mark) *chilembo*.  
 Stand, v. (get up) *ima*, (be upright) *panama*. Stand still, stop, *panama*. Stand in line, *chama*.  
 Star, n. (small) *nyenyenzi* (—), (large) *ntandala* (—).  
 Stare, *loleshya, loleshya*.  
 Start, v. (be startled) *zicimuka*, (go off) *ima, luta, ya*, (set moving) *yendeshya, utusha*.  
 Starve, v. (nt.) *fwa na njala, fwila njala*.  
 State, n. (condition) *mankatilo*.  
 Stay, v. (remain) *nkala*, (for a time) *swa*, (wait) *lindila*, (stop behind) *sala*.  
 Steal, v. *punsha, punshisha*.  
 Steam, n. *chusi* (*viusi*).  
 Steep, a. *-peneme*.  
 Stem, n. *msali* (*mi-s.*).  
 Step, v. Step on, trample, *kanda*.  
 Stern, n. (of canoe) *mpuna* (*mi-p.*).  
 Stick, n. *kankole* (*tu-n.*), (knobbed club) *nkole* (—), (for stirring food) *mitiko*, (for toasting) *mpaso* (*mi-p.*), *mpanilo* (*mi-p.*), (pointed, for digging) *chinsopwe* (*vi-n.*), (of hide) *chikoti* (*vi-k.*). v. Stick on ground, *ambika, zika pansi*. Stick to, *kangamila, kumbatila*.  
*Be Sticky, v. kangamila.*  
 Still, ad. (yet, more) *soti*. a. See Quiet. Be still, *nkala chechele*, (continue being) *nkala soti*.  
 Sting, n. *mushula* (*mi-s.*). v. *luma*, (of the pain) *waawa*.  
 Stink, v. *munka chichiwi*.  
 Stir, v. (as food) *vundula*.  
 Stockade, n. *linga* (*ma-l.*).

- Stomach, n. *vumo* (ma-v.).
- Stone, n. *mwala* (*miala*), (large) *chimwala* (*vimiala*), (small) *kamwala* (*tumiala*).
- Stony, a. -a *nkolokoto*.
- Stool, n. *chilimba* (vi-l.).
- Stoop, v. *elama*, *welama*.
- Stop, v. Cause to stop, *penga*, *pengezhya*, *panamika*, (make leave off) *lekeshya*. Come to a stop, *panama*, (leave off) *leka*, *sia*. See Stay. Stop up (a hole, &c.) *sinka*, *sinkishya*.
- Store-house, n. (for grain, &c.) *ntumba* (—).
- Storm, n. (rain) *mwala*, (wind) *mpepo*, (gale) *chinkuka*.
- Story, n. *chisimikizi* (vi-s.).  
Be Straight, v. *lungama*, *lingana*.  
Make straight, *lungumika*, *linganishya*.
- Strain, v. (filter) *vwisha*.
- Strainer, n. *lusanso* (ma-l.).
- Strange, n. (novel) -a *kusa*, (remarkable) -*okanganya*.
- Stranger, n. *mulwendu* (a-*lw*.), *muntu wa kusa*.
- Strangle, v. *fina pa mkosi*.
- Strap, n. *nkanda* (—).
- Stray, v. *luila*.
- Stream, n. *kankolo* (*tumikolo*), *kamana* (tu-m.) *katonto*.
- Strength, n. *mpamvu*, *makosa*.  
Strengthen, *panga* (or, *pezhya*, *chita*) *mpamvu*.
- Stretch, v. (straighten) *tambulula*, (tighten) *tinta*, (extend, spread out) *yansika*, (a mat) *yanshya*.
- Strike, n. *nyata*, (hammer) *konkowela*.
- String, n. *mwando* (mi-a.). v.
- String together, put on string, *tunga*.
- Strip, v. Strip off, (clothes) *vwulisha*, (bark) *funda nzizi*.
- Stripe, n. (streak, band) *chirweta* (vi-w.), *chilembo* (vi-l.). Be striped, *lemba*.
- Stroll, v. *nyunga*, *tandala*.
- Strong, a. -a *mpamvu*, -a *makosa*, -*okosa*. Be strong, *kosa*. Make strong, see Strength.
- Struggle, v. *lwa*, (compete) *yezhyana*.
- Stuff, v. (with food) *kutishya*, (fill full) *sushya*.
- Stumble, v. *kumbulwa*.
- Stump, n. (of tree) *chisinga* (vi-s.).
- Stun, v. *tayishya* *nzulu*, *kanganishya*.  
Be Stupid, v. *pusa*. He is stupid, *aliye nzulu*.
- Stutter, v. See Stammer.
- Submissive, a. -*omwila*, -a *mwawano*.
- Submit, v. (give way) *wewwa*.
- Subside, v. *chepa*.
- Succeed, v. (prosper) *shuka*.
- Success, n. *shuko* (ma-s.).
- Suck, v. (as baby) *nyonka*. Give suck to, *suckle*, *nyonsha*.
- Sucker, n. (of plant) *msii* (mi-s.).
- Suffer, v. See Pain.
- Be Sufficient, v. *kusha*.
- Sugar-cane, n. *injua* (mi-n.).
- Suicide, n. *kulipaya yeka*.
- Suit, v. *wama*, *temwa*, *lingana*.
- Summer, n. See Season.
- Sun, n. *zua* (*mazua*). Sunrise, *zua lotatikakwela*, *zua kukwela*.
- Sunset, *zua kuswa*, *zua kulowa*.
- Sunshine, n. *kazua*.
- Superintend, v. (direct) *wamishya*, (hurry on) *kulumishya*.
- Superintendent, n. *kapitao*.
- Supplicate, v. *lambitila*.
- Support, v. (help) *yavya*, (give food, &c. to) *chishya*, *pula*, (prop up) *chilikila*.
- Suppose, v. *lukana*.
- Be Sure, v. (know) *siwa chendi*.
- Surface, n. *pamulu*.
- Surpass, v. (exceed) *pula*, (overcome) *wewya*.
- Surprise, v. *kanganya*. A surprise, *chokanganya*.
- Surround, v. (be round, stand round) *sunguluka*, *nkala mbali zhyonse*.
- Swagger, v. *chitomeka*.
- Swallow, v. *mela*.

Swamp, n. *nsansa* (—).  
 Swear, v. *lapa*.  
 Sweat, n. *tukuta* (*ma-t.*). v. *tukuta*.  
 Sweep, v. (house, floor, &c.) *pyela*.  
 Sweetness, n. (to taste) *lunsa*.  
 a. -a *lunsa*.  
 Swell, v. *vimba*.  
 Swing, v. (sway to and fro) *zwezwela*.  
 Sword, n. *chiluesi* (*vimbezi*).  
 Sympathize, n. *mwana na*.  
 Syphilis, n. *chindoko*.  
 Table, n. *mariri* (i. e. bedstead, raised frame with legs).  
 Tail, n. *mchila* (*mi-ch.*).  
 Take, v. *ula*, (receive) *poka*, (convey) *twala*. Take from, *twalila*, *poka*. Take place, *pona*. Take care of, *sunga*.  
 Tale, n. *chisimikizi* (*vi-s.*). Tell tales about, *simikizhya*.  
 Talk, n. *makani*. v. *chita makani*. What are you talking about? *makani yanji ayo?* Talk loudly, constantly, *welweta*.  
 Tall, a. -*tali*. Be tall, *talimpa*. Make tall, *taliya*.  
 Tame, v. *leka*.  
 Taste, v. *sonda*, (perceive by taste) *mwva*.  
 Tattoo, n. (tribal marks, &c.) *ndembo*. v. *tenda ndembo*.  
 Taunt, v. *pepula*, *chita zungo*.  
 Tax, n. *sonko*. v. *sonkeahya*.  
 Teach, v. *sambishya*, (publicly instruct, make generally known) *yendeshya*. See *Learn*.  
 Tear, v. *ng'anula*, (in pieces) *proezula*.  
 Tear, n. (from eye) *msozi* (*mi-s.*). Shed tears, *lila msozi*.  
 Tease, v. *tatika*.  
 Tell, v. *nena*, *lowila*, *uzhya*.  
 Temper, n. (disposition) *mitima*.  
 Tempt, v. (test) *yeshya*, (entice) *chenjeleka*, (excite desires) *kumbwishya*.  
 Ten, n. a. *kumi* (*ma-k.*).

Tend, v. Have a tendency, *saka*.  
 Tendril, n. *msisi* (*mi-s.*).  
 Terms, n. Arrange terms, *ushyana*.  
 Be Terrible, v. *yofya*, *yofizhya*.  
 Terror, n. *mweso*, *uwwa*.  
 Test, v. *yeshya*.  
 Than, conj. (In comparisons) *kuli*. You are taller than I, *mweso atali kuli neo*.  
 Thank, v. *yamika*, *yamikila*. The usual phrase is, *nakula* (thank you), *nilukute* (no, thank you).  
 That, conj. *kuli*.  
 That, a. -*la* (with proper prefix), -o (ditto). That person, *mntu ula* (or, *uyo*). Those things, *vintu vila* (or, *ivyo*).  
 Thatch, v. *vimba*.  
 The, a. Expressed by the noun prefix, *mu-*, *a-*, *u-*, &c. The boy, *wamwana*. The things, *vivintu*.  
 Theft, n. *kupunsha*.  
 Then, ad. *apo*, *nipo*.  
 There, ad. *apo*, *uko*, *kula*, *pala*.  
 Therefore, conj. (for this reason) *mlandu uo*.  
 They, v. (of persons) *awo*, *owe*, (of things) *isi*, *izhyo*, &c.  
 Thick, a. -*kulu mutumba*.  
 Thicket, n. *lusaka* (*ma-l.*).  
 Thickness, n. *mutumba*.  
 Thief, n. *njivi* (—), *nkungu* (—), *nyalufwimbi* (*a-n.*), (robber) *kapondo* (*tu-p.*).  
 Thigh, v. *chituwelo* (*vi-t.*), *chivelo* (*vi-w.*).  
 Thin, a. (lean) -*onyala*, (not thick) -*tonto mutumba*. Be thin, *nyala*.  
 Thing, n. *chintu* (*vintu*), (small) *kantu* (*tuntu*).  
 Think, v. (reflect) *lukana*.  
 Thirst, n. *njola*. Feel thirst, *yuma mntima*.  
 This, a. (of person) *nyu*, *awa*, (of things) *uu*, *ii*, *ichi*, &c.  
 Thong, n. (of bark) *lusizi* (*msizi*), (of leather) *nkanda* (—).  
 Thorn, n. *munya* (*minga*).  
 Though, conj. *ngati*, *ingawe*.

**Thought**, n. (thinking) *kulukana*.  
(plan, idea) *uzelu*.

**Thread**, n. *usalu*. v. (beads)  
*tunga (ulungu)*, *tulila (ulungu)*  
*usalu*.

**Threaten**, v. *yofya, yofizhya*.

**Three**, a. *-talu*.

**Thrive**, v. (animals) *kula*, (plants)  
*mela*, (be successful) *shuka*.

**Throat**, n. (internal, neck) *mkosi*  
(*mi-k.*), (internal, larynx) *pendomelo*  
(*a-p.*).

**Throb**, v. *tutumila*.

**Throng**, n. *mulongo (mi-l.)*.

**Through**, ad. prp. *pakati, mkati*,  
(because of) *mlandu wa*, (by means  
of) *na*.

**Throw**, v. (as missile) *poza*. Ap.  
*pozila*. Throw away, *taya*. Throw  
down, *poza, wizhya*.

**Thrust**, v. *kanka, kankizhya*.

**Thumb**, n. *chikumo (vi-k.,—also,*  
*toe)*.

**Thunder**, n. *Leza* (also, God, sky).

**Thus**, ad. *tete*.

**Thwart**, v. *kangizhya, pengezhya*.

*Be Tidy*, v. *wama*.

**Tie**, v. *manga*, (in knot) *chita*  
*fundo*.

**Tight**, v. Be tight, hold tight,  
*kata, katishya*, (of rope) *tintika*.  
Draw tight, *tinta*. Make tight, see  
**Tio, Fasten**.

**Till**, prp. conj. *mpaka, tatikile*.

**Time**, n. (in general) *nyengo*, (a  
time, occasion) *chaka (zyaka)*, (time  
of day) *sua*. At what time (of  
day), What is the time? *sua*  
*tiani?* With numerals, *ka*. One  
time, once, *kamo*; twice, *kawili*;  
three times, *katatu*; and so on.  
Time after time, *chaka na chaka*.  
Times of day:—(very early) *mana*  
*mpepo*, (dawn) *kucha*, (sunrise) *sua*  
*kukwela*, (morning) *mawa*, (noon)  
*sua pakati* (or, *pa mutu*), (afternoon)  
*sua losendama*, (sunset) *sua kuswa*  
(or, *kulowa*), (evening) *chingulo*.

**Timid**, a. *oyopa, -na mwezo*.

**Tiny**, a. *-tonto ngako*. A tiny  
thing, *kantu katonto*.

**Tip**, n. (end, point) *chinsopwe*  
(*vi-n.*).

**Tire**, v. (exhaust) *wevya, vufya*.

Be tired, *wewa, vupa*.

**To**, prp. *ku, ku-*, (up to, until)  
*mpaka, tatikile*.

**Toast**, v. *chita kuamba, ambika*  
(on a stick, *ku mpanilo*).

**Tobacco**, n. *fwaka*. The leaves  
are *matepo*, (when dried) *vyambwa*.  
Tobacco pipe, *chikololo (vi-k.)*.  
Smoke tobacco, *pepa fwaka*.

**To-day**, n. *lelo, karua aka*.

**Toe**, n. *chikumo (vi-k.,—also,*  
*thumb)*.

**Together**, ad. *pamo*.

**Tomato**, n. *chinyamate (vi-n.)*.

**To-morrow**, n. *mailo* (also, yester-  
day). To-morrow morning, *mawa*  
*mailo*. Day after to-morrow, *mazo*.  
Day after, *mazo, mazo patati*.

**Tongue**, n. *lulimi (ma-lul.)*.

**To-night**, n. *usiku wa lelo*. Last  
night, *usiku wapita, usiku mailo*  
(also, to-morrow night).

**Tooth**, n. *linu (menu)*.

**Top**, n. *kunulu, pamulu*. Top  
knot of thatch, *vumbwi (a-v.)*.

**Torch**, n. *mwenji (mi-e.)*.

**Torment, Torture**, v. *chitizhya*.

**Torpor**, n. *chitulo*.

**Tortoise**, n. *fulu (a-f.)*. Tortoise-  
shell, *chigamba (vi-g.)*.

**Touch**, v. *nyokola*.

**Town**, n. *munzi (minzi)*.

**Trace, Track, Trail**, n. (foot-  
marks) *makwayo*.

**Trade, Traffic**, n. *usita*. v.  
*chitosita*.

**Train**, v. (teach) *sambizhya*.

**Trample**, v. *kanda*.

**Translate**, v. *yaluzhya*.

**Transport**, v. *twala, ula*.

**Trap**, n. Different kinds are,  
*msampa (mi-s.)*, *mwando (mi-a,*  
*noose)*, *chumba (vi-u. cage)*. See  
**Fish-trap**. Set a trap, *tea*.

**Travel**, v. *yenda utwendo, chita*  
*utwendo*.

**Traveller**, n. *munikwendo (a-ul.)*.

**Tread on**, v. *kanda*.

Treat, v. Treat badly, *ifya*.  
Treat well, *wamila*. Treat as doctor,  
*alika*.

Tree, n. *chimuti* (*vimiti*).

Tremble, v. *telema*.

Trench, n. *kakolo* (*tu-kolo*).

Trial, n. (testing) *kuyezhya*,  
(hardship) *ntamu* (—), (judicial)  
*mlandu* (*mi-l.*). Hold a trial, *chita*  
(or, *lawila*) *mlandu*. Bring to trial,  
*songa mlandu*. Decide in trial,  
*pambula mlandu*. Party in a trial,  
*simulandu* (*a-s.*).

Tribe, n. *mkowa* (*mi-k.*).

Tribute, n. *sonko*.

Trick, n. *maluso*, *kuchenjela*.

Trip up, v. (stumble) *kumbu-*  
*lwa*.

Triumph, v. (exult) *yangala*,  
*skelela*.

Trouble, n. *ntamu* (—), *malosa*.  
v. *chita ntamu*, *tatika*, *ifya mtima*.

True, a. *-endi*, (real, genuine)  
*nga-*. A true statement, truth,  
*chendi* (*viendi*), *lizu lya chendi*.

Truly, ad. *chendi*, *ngako*.

Trumpet, n. *lipenga*.

Trunk, n. (of elephant) *chitamba*  
(*vi-t.*), (of tree) *chimuti*, (of body)  
*chimbubumtila* (*vi-m.*).

Trust, v. *lambula*. Be trusted,  
*lambuliwa*. Trustworthy, *-endi*.

Truth, n. *uendi*, *chendi* (*viendi*).

Try, v. (endeavour, test) *yezhya*,  
(judicially) *songa mlandu*.

Tug, v. *punyumunya*, *tinta*,  
(draw) *kula*.

Tumble, v. *wa*, *pona*.

Tune, n. *kuimba*, *ulimbo*  
(*nzimbo*).

Turn, v. (change) *yaluka*, (act.)  
*yaluzhya*, (make go round) *zungulu-*  
*zhya*. Turn over (upside down),  
*vunukila*. Turn round, *cheuka*.

Turn back, *wela*, (act.) *welozhya*.

Tusk, n. (of elephant) *mnyanga*  
(*mi-n.*), *nzovu* (—).

Twelve, a. *kumi na -wili*.

Twenty, a. *makumi awili*.

Twice, ad. *kawili*.

Twig, n. *nyamsanche* (—).

Twins, n. *amapasa*, (one) *mpasa*.

Two, a. *-wili*.

Ugly, a. *-ipa*.

Ulcer, n. *chilonda* (*vi-l.*).

Be Unable to, v. *kanga* (with  
Infin. Mood).

Be Uncertain, v. (perplexed)  
*kaika*.

Uncle, n. *wata* (i. e. father).

Uncoil, v. *vungulula*, (straight  
out) *tambulula*. Be uncoiled, *vu-*  
*nguluka*, *tambalala*.

Uncover, v. *vunukula*.

Under, ad. prp. *pansi*, *kunyansi*.

Understand, v. *mwawa*. Do you  
understand? *ukumwawa?*

Undertake, v. *zumela*, (make a  
contract) *uzhyana*.

Undress, v. *wwula*, (act.) *vwuli-*  
*zhya*.

Unfasten, v. *mangulula*.

Unfold, v. *vungulula*.

Unintentionally, ad. *te lona*,  
*paliye lona*.

Unique, a. *-eka*.

Universe, n. (earth and sky) *chalo*  
*na kumulu*.

Unmerciful, a. *aliye matu*.

Unripe, a. *-wisi*.

Until, conj. *mpaka*, *tatikile*.

Untie, v. *mangulula*.

Up, Upon, ad. *kumulu*, *panulu*.

Be Upright, v. (erect) *panama*.

Upset, turn upside down, v.  
*vunukila*.

Urge, v. *uzhya*.

Urine, n. *mkozo*. Pass urine,  
*nya mkozo*, *tunda*.

Us, pr. *seo*, *ti-*.

Use, v. (employ) *tuma*, *tumi-*  
*zhya*.

Be Used, v. (accustomed) *yowe-*  
*lela*.

Be Useful, v. *wamila*, (*ku*)*wa-*  
*weme*.

Useless, a. *-a tiala*.

Usual, a. *-a chisusu* (i. e. a  
custom).

Utter, v. (put out) *funya*, (speak)  
*lawila*, *nena*. Utter a sound, *lila*.

- Vain**, a. Be vain, *meka, chito-meka*. In vain, *tiala, wanzi*.  
**Valley**, n. *mpala (ma-m.)*.  
**Value**, n. *mtengo*. Of value, valuable, *-a mtengo ukulu*.  
**Vapour**, n. (smoke) *chusi*, (mist) *fulele*.  
**Varied**, **Various**, a. *-mbi -mbi, -a mitundu inyinji*.  
**Vegetation**, n. *vyomela, vimiti*.  
**Vein**, n. *lusipa (ma-l.)*.  
**Vengeance**, n. Take vengeance, *lipishya, weleshya*.  
**Veranda**, n. *mlokolo (ma-l.)*.  
**Verdict**, n. Give a verdict, *pambula mlandu*.  
**Vertical**, a. (overhead) *pamutu*, (perpendicular) *peneme*.  
**Very**, ad. *chendi, ngako, vivvi, chiwi*.  
**Vessel**, n. Native containing vessels of different kinds are, *ntumo* and *mbete* (for drinking), *mtondo (mi-t.)* pitcher, water-jar, *nongo* (—, a deeper kind), *lutilo (ma-lul.)*, small flat dish), *chinkombe (vi-n.,* for cooking meat, &c.),—also *nyampale* (frying-pan), *kopo* (—, any European metal vessel, tin pot, cup, jug, &c.). Cooking vessel, (common) *ntalu*, (basin) *mkate (mi-k.)*.  
**Vex**, v. *tatika*.  
**Vibrate**, v. *telemela, tutumila*.  
**Victorious**, a. Be victorious, *kuwezya*.  
**Vigour**, n. *mpamvu*.  
**Village**, n. *munzi (minzi)*, (small) *kamunzi (tumunzi)*.  
**Villain**, n. *mbifi*.  
**Violence**, n. *mpamvu, ukali*.  
**Be Visible**, v. *oneka*.  
**Visit**, v. *yungila*.  
**Visitor**, n. (stranger) *mlendo (a-l.)*, *nkuza (a-k.)*.  
**Voice**, n. *lisu (ma-l.)*.  
**Vomit**, v. *luka*.  
  
**Wag**, v. (i.e. tail) *kupwilila*.  
**Wages**, n. *chilambu (vi-l.)*. Pay wages, *lambula*.  
  
**Waist**, n. *mluunda* (i.e. at the loins).  
**Wait**, v. (stay) *nkala, linda, swaa*, (for a purpose) *lindila*, (pause) *panama*. Wait on, (as a servant) *tumikila, lindilila*.  
**Wake**, v. *uka*, (act.) *usha*.  
**Walk**, v. (go on foot) *yenda kumendo*. Take a walk, *yunga*. Walk quickly, energetically, *fwamba*.  
**Wall**, n. (of village) *linga (ma-l.)*, of house (native) *chipupa (vi-p.)*, (of enclosure, fence) *nuito* (—).  
**Wallet**, n. (of skin) *nkomwa* (—), (plaited) *nzenzele* (—).  
**Wander**, v. (ramble) *yunga*, (be lost) *luila*.  
**Want**, v. (desire, wish) *panywa, saka, sakila*, (be short of) *chepa, leshya*, (be without) *sowa*. What do you want? *musakilanji?*  
**War**, n. *nkondo* (—).  
**Ward off**, v. *chinjilishya*.  
**Warm**, a. *-a chive, -ochita chive*.  
**Warn**, v. *nzhya*.  
**Wash**, v. (clothes, plates, &c.) *suka*, (face, limbs, &c.) *samba*.  
**Waste**, v. (misuse) *mwashya, taya, lya tiala*.  
**Watch**, v. *sunga, lindila*, (keep awake) *kala tuni*, (observe) *loleshya*. Set to watch, *ika pa chilindilo*.  
**Water**, n. *manzi*. Draw water, *tapa manzi*.  
**Watercourse**, n. (natural) *chisengu (vi-s.)*, (drain, trench) *kakolo (tu-kolo)*.  
**Waterfall**, n. (place) *potenena manzi*.  
**Watering-place**, n. *chao (vyao)*.  
**Water-jar**, n. *mtondo (mi-t.)*, *nongo* (—).  
**Waver**, v. *kaika*.  
**Wax**, n. *sela*.  
**Way**, n. *njila*. Be in the way, (obstruct) *chila kawindi, fenga*.  
**Waylay**, v. *fisamila*.  
**We**, pr. *eco, ti-*.  
**Weak**, a. *-liokose*. Be weak (enfeebled), *tentola mwiso*.  
**Wealth**, n. *ckuma, mpango*.

Wean, v. *lekehya* (*mwana asanyonke*).

Wear, v. *wwala*.

Be Weary, v. *wupa, wewa*.

Weave, v. *luka*.

Wedding, n. *kulingula*.

Weed, n. *chomela cha msanga*.

Weep, v. *lila misizi*.

Weigh, v. *linga*.

Weir, n. Fish-weir, *chanza* (*vi-a*, its passage being *ntuu*).

Welcome, v. *pokelela, penga*.

Well, n. *mchela* (*mi-ch.*), (spring) *sauko* (*ma-s.*). a. (in good health)

*makosa*. Are you well? *mtu makosa?* Get well, *pola*. ad. *parweme, viweme*. Well known, *-a mbili*.

Wet, a. *-a manzi*. Wet season, *mainza*. It is wet to-day, *mwala lelo*.

What, pr. *tiani?* What for? *mlandu wanji?* What is it? *ni chinji?*

What are we to do? *tichitenji?* What sort of? *-nji?* What time is it? *zua tiani?* n. *-ni*, (what kind?) *-nji?*

When, pr. conj. *lini?* (on what day) *zua lya kuni?* (at what time) *zua tiani?* As conj., *umo mu-*.

Where, pr. *kuni?* As conj., *uko ku-*.

Whetstone, n. *mnolo* (*mi-n.*).

Which, pr. *-ni?* (which kind) *-nji?*

While, conj. *umo mu-*.

Whirlwind, n. *kakungulu* (*tu-ku.*).

Whisper, n. *kawelewele* (*tu-w.*). v. *welweshya*.

Whistle, n. *mlozi* (*mi-l.*). v. *chita* (or, *lichya*) *mlozi*.

White, a. *-tua*. White (European) man, *mweta* (*a-s.*). Be white, *tua, tuuka*. Make white, *tuusha, tuulishya*. n. *utua*.

Who, pr. *-ni?* Who is this? *ni twani uyu?* Who are you? *mwao ni wani?*

Whole, a. (all) *-onse*. All the day, *zua lyonse*. All in a mass, as a whole, *-a mpumbulu*.

Wholesome, a. *-wemu*, (as food) *-siyeka*.

Whose, pr. *-a wani?*

Why, pr. *mlandu wanji?* *ni chinji?*

Wicked, a. *-ipa, -wi*.

Wickedness, n. *wipa*.

Wide, a. *-kulu mutumba*.

Widow, Widower, n. *chokolo* (*vy-o.*), *-ofwitwa*.

Width, n. *mutumba*.

Wife, n. *mkazi*, (addressed by husband as) *mwana*.

Wild, a. (in wild state) *-a msanga*.

Wilderness, n. *sanga* (*ma-s.*), *chisanga* (*vi-s.*).

Wilfully, ad. *lona*.

Be Willing, v. *zumela*.

Willingness, n. *mwano, kuzumela*.

Win, v. (excel) *pula*, (be first) *tangila*, (overcome) *wevya*.

Wind, n. *mpepo* (—). High wind, *chinkuka* (*vi-n.*). Whirlwind, *kakungulu* (*tu-ku.*).

Wing, n. *papiko* (*ma-p.*).

Wink, v. *kopela*.

Winnow, v. *pepeta*.

Winter, n. See Season.

Wipe, v. (dry) *pukuta*, (with duster) *kunkumula*.

Wisdom, n. *nzelu, maluso*.

Wise, a. *-a nzelu zinyinji*. A wise man (a sage), *mwine wa nzelu*.

Wish, v. *fangwa, temwa, saka*.

Wit, Wits, n. *nzelu* (—).

Witch, Wizard, n. *ufwiti* (—).

Witchcraft, n. *ufwiti, malosa, kuloa*.

With, prp. *na*.

Wither, v. *fwaa*, (dry up) *yuma*.

Within, prp. ad. *pakati, mkati, mu-*.

Without, ad. prp. Be without, *sowa*;—also, *-jiye*, with noun, or infin. mood of verb.

Witness, n. (eyewitness) *kamense* (*a-k.*).

Woman, n. *mwana-kazi* (*anakazi*), *mkazi* (*a-k.*).

Womb, n. *rumo* (*ma-v.*).

Wonder, v. *kanganizhiwa*. A wonder, *chintu chokanganya*.

Wood, n. (substance) *chimuti*, (forest) *sanga*.



Wool, n. *masako*.  
 Word, n. *lizu* (*ma-l.*).  
 Work, n. *mulimo* (*mi-l.*). v. *chita*  
 (or *kata*) *mulimo*. Work hard, *ka-*  
*tishya mulimo*.  
 Workman, n. (skilled) *ng'anga*,  
*misili* (*a-m.*).  
 World, n. *chalo*, *chalo na kumulu*.  
 Worship, v. *lambila*. Place of  
 (native) worship, *muzimu*.  
 Worst, a. *-ipa kuli-onse*.  
 Worthless, a. *-a tiala*, *-ipa viwi*.  
 Wound, v. *lasa*, *ifya*. n. Wound,  
 (unhealed) *chilonda* (*vi-l.*), (scar)  
*wanga* (*ma-w.*).  
 Wrestle, v. *kwa*, *yezhyana*.  
 Wretch, n. *muntu muwi*, *msali*,  
*mbifi*.  
 Wring, v. *kama*, *fina*. Wring  
 out, *kamula*.  
 Wrinkle, n. *nsini* (—).  
 Wrist, n. *fundo* (*ma-f.*) *lya cha-*  
*nzanza*.  
 Write, v. (make a mark) *lemba*,  
*chita chilembo*.  
 Writhe, Wriggle, v. *vyunga*,  
*fundukuta*.  
 Wrong, a. *-ipa*. v. *ifya*. Do  
 wrongly, (bungle) *tondwa*, (make  
 mistake) *cheneka*.

Yard, n. (measure of cloth) *lupa-*  
*nde* (*ma-l.*). Two yards of cloth,  
 (fathom) *mukwamba* (*mi-k.*). Half  
 yard, *mkono* (*mi-k.*). (Enclosure)  
*lua* (*ma-l.*).

Yawn, n. *mwao* (*miao*). v. *chita*  
*mwao*.

Year, n. *chilimika* (*vi-l.*). Last  
 year, *chilimika cha pazuli*. Next  
 year, *chilimika cha pantanzi*.

Yes, ad. *inde*, *aye*.

Yesterday, n. *mailo* (also, to-  
 morrow), *zua lyichipita*, *mailo echi-*  
*pita*.

Yet, ad. (still, again) *soti*.

You, pr. Sing. *wao*, *u-*, *-ku-*. And  
 you, *naue*. It is you, *nive*. Plur.  
*mveo*, *mu-*, *-m-*. And you, *namwe*.  
 It is you, *nimwe*.

Young, a. *-tonto*. A young per-  
 son, *mtumbwana* (*a-l.*).

Your, a. (Sing.) *-ako*, (Plur.)  
*-anu*.

Youth, n. (time of) *ntento*, *ulu-*  
*mbwana*. See **Young**.

Zeal, n. *mpamvu*.

Zebra, n. *mbwete* (*a-chim.*).

Be **Zigzag**, *vyongoloka*.